

FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION
NATIONAL CANCER INSTITUTE

+ + + + +

WORKSHOP ON TUMOR VACCINES

+ + + + +

THURSDAY,
DECEMBER 10, 1998

The workshop was held at 8:30 a.m. in the Masur Auditorium, Building 10, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland

Speakers:

Allen Albright, Ph.D.
Jacques Banchemereau, Ph.D.
Donna K. Chandler, Ph.D.
David M. Essayan, M.D.
Patricia Keegan, M.D.
Donald W. Kufe, M.D.
Larry Kwak, M.D., Ph.D.
Edison Liu, M.D.
Michael Lotze, M.D.
Gerald Marti, M.D., Ph.D.
James Mulé
Drew Pardoll, M.D.
Raj K. Puri, M.D., Ph.D.
Glenn Rice, Ph.D.
Ralph Steinman, M.D.
David L. Urdal, Ph.D.
Kathryn Zoon, Ph.D.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

I N D E X

Welcome and Opening Remarks, Raj Puri, M.D.	3
Statement by Kathryn Zoon, M.D.	6
Keynote Address, Edison Liu, M.D.	12
Plenary Address, Ralph Steinman, M.D.	26
Presentation by Patricia Keegan, M.D.	64
Presentation by David Essayan, M.D.	92
Presentation by Raj Puri, M.D.	103
Presentation by Donna Chandler, M.D.	122
Presentation by Allen Albright, Ph.D.	136
Presentation by Gerald Marti, M.D.	156
Presentation by Jacques Banchereau, Ph.D.	168
Presentation by David Urdal, Ph.D.	188
Presentation by Glenn Rice, Ph.D.	205
Presentation by Donald Kufe, M.D.	222
Presentation by Michael Lotze, M.D.	237

P R O C E E D I N G S

(8:30 a.m.)

1
2
3 DR. PURI: Good morning and welcome to
4 the FDA and NCI workshop on Tumor Vaccines. My name
5 is Raj Puri and I'm the scientific and the clinical
6 review and Chief, Laboratory of Molecular Tumor
7 Biology in the Division of Cellular and Gene
8 Therapy, Center for Biologics Evaluation and
9 Research, Food and Drug Administration.

10 Before we begin, I'm required to say to
11 you some of the housekeeping rules. No standing or
12 sitting is allowed in the aisles by order of the
13 fire department. There are two fire exists, one to
14 the left of the stage which empties out in the front
15 of the NIH Library and the other through the main
16 doors in the back.

17 Complimentary refreshment breaks will be
18 provided each day of the meeting. The refreshment
19 station will be set up in the main lobby area of
20 Building 10, not far from the Masur Auditorium.

21 Due to the amount of traffic throughout
22 the building, we ask that you please wear your name
23 tag as conference identification when participating
24 in the refreshment breaks. Signs are posted.

S A G C O R P .

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Please note that no drinking or eating
2 is allowed in the auditorium.

3 Now I would like to take this
4 opportunity to thank our distinguished hosts, Dr.
5 Zoon, Dr. Seigal and Dr. Ed Liu and our
6 distinguished invited speakers, panel discussion
7 participants, poster presenters and of course, the
8 audience, for taking time off from your very busy
9 schedules to participate in the discussion of some
10 of the important old and some of the new issues in
11 the tumor vaccines.

12 According to the latest Pharmaceutical
13 Manufacturers Association Biotechnology News, there
14 are 350 new biotechnology medicines in development.
15 Among 350, 171 are for cancer. Seventy-seven
16 vaccines are in development and a significant
17 proportion of them are therapeutic cancer vaccines.
18 Thus, there is a tremendous interest to cancer
19 vaccines and other product development for cancer.

20 It is our hope that at this workshop we
21 will hammer out some of the important deficiencies
22 that might be impeding the rapid progress of tumor
23 vaccine product and clinical development.

24 I would now like to introduce our first
25 and highly distinguished speaker, Dr. Kathryn Zoon,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Director of the Center for Biologics Evaluation and
2 Research, one of the six centers of the Food and
3 Drug Administration. The Center is responsible for
4 assuring the safety, purity, potency and
5 effectiveness of biological products used for
6 prevention, diagnosis and treatment of disease.
7 Towards this goal, CBER conducts vital scientific
8 research, establishes written and physical
9 standards, regulates the testing of investigation of
10 products, evaluates applications, licensing
11 biological products, performs post-marketing
12 surveillance and insures the continuing safety and
13 efficacy through compliance activities.

14 Dr. Zoon brings to her duties as
15 Director a distinguished scientific career. After
16 receiving her Ph.D. in Biochemistry in 1975 from
17 Johns Hopkins University, Dr. Zoon was awarded a
18 post-doctoral fellowship at the NIH by Nobel
19 Laureate Dr. Christian Envincent where she pioneered
20 work on the purification and characterization of
21 human interferons.

22 In 1980, she joined the Food and Drug
23 Administration and continued her scientific research
24 career as a senior investigator, as a Director of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Division of Cytokine Biology and in 1992, assumed
2 the Directorship of the Center.

3 Dr. Zoon continue to conduct innovative
4 research in the field of interferon purification and
5 characterization. Dr. Zoon is the editor of Journal
6 of Interferon Research and has received numerous
7 awards including the meritorious executive rank
8 award for Sustained Superior Performance in
9 revitalizing and reorganization the Center for
10 Biologics, Evaluation and Research to meet the
11 challenges of new responsibilities and goals.

12 It gives me great pleasure to introduce
13 Dr. Zoon who will develop welcome remarks and
14 present conference goals and objectives.

15 Dr. Zoon?

16 DR. ZOON: Good morning. First of all,
17 I'd like to welcome everyone to this workshop on
18 tumor vaccines. I was reflecting just before the
19 meeting, this is not a new area. We've been working
20 on
21 tumor vaccines ever since I came to the FDA in 1980.
22 However, I have to say the science has evolved
23 rapidly and as witnessed today by the attendance to
24 this workshop which you may by looking around you
25 see as close to 500 people is quite impressive with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 both the scientific interest as well as the progress
2 we have made in this area.

3 I would especially like to thank the
4 organizers of this workshop. This has been a
5 tremendous effort to put this together, bringing all
6 the right people to bear on the issues that we need
7 to discuss today has been a monumental job and has
8 taken the cooperation and really dedication of all
9 involved in organizing and I would especially like
10 to recognize Dr. Raj Puri for leading this effort.

11 We look forward to working with the NCI,
12 not only on this conference, but many in the future
13 as they relate to new medicines for the treatment of
14 cancer. This is one area that I think offers
15 amazing promise and should be explored together as a
16 combined effort to make sure that the scientific
17 standards by which we review these products are
18 appropriate.

19 Recent advances in the identification
20 and cloning and characterization of tumor-associated
21 antigens and the isolation and expansion of potent
22 antigen-presenting cells such as dendritic cells has
23 generated renewed scientific interest in the
24 development of tumor vaccines. A number of clinical

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 protocols have advanced to Phase 3 stages of
2 development.

3 Although methods for characterization of
4 cloned antigens or synthesized peptides are
5 available, methods for physiochemical and functional
6 characterization of whole cell vaccines, tumor cell
7 lysates, polyvalent tumor antigen preparations,
8 antigen presenting cells and other cell-derived
9 vaccines are not well defined. For all biological
10 products, general regulatory principles apply. For
11 these products safety, purity, potency and efficacy
12 will be needed for licensure.

13 Some of the above-mentioned products
14 present unique challenges in terms of
15 characterization of identity, purity, potency as
16 compared to some other biological products. For
17 autologous tumor cells such as vaccines safety,
18 identification of major cellular components, and
19 potency tests have not been formalized. The
20 consensus on the appropriate immunophenotypic and
21 functional characteristics of dendritic cells has
22 not been reached.

23 Moreover, significant clinical issues
24 remain to be addressed in the area of biological

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunological assessments as well as other areas in
2 terms of their clinical applications.

3 Optimization and standardization are
4 needed to develop acceptable immunological outcomes
5 to guide the conduct of later phases of clinical
6 trial development.

7 Prior to proceeding to randomize Phase 3
8 trials, particularly in the adjuvant setting, it is
9 appropriate to require evidence of clinical activity
10 or what effects on immunological surrogate endpoints
11 be sufficient.

12 The FDA and the National Cancer
13 Institute share a common goal to promote development
14 of safe and effective therapies for human cancer in
15 a timely manner. This conference is designed to
16 address several major points. First, to bring
17 together scientists, clinicians and regulators
18 developing or helping to develop cancer vaccines
19 products with the objective of being able to reach
20 an understanding of issues involved in the
21 characterization of tumor vaccines, the need for
22 acceptable identity potency tests and clinical
23 endpoints.

24 Second, identify when these issues need
25 to be addressed in product development. Third,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 provide a forum for open exchange of ideas and
2 product development for cancer vaccines and in the
3 design of clinical trials and to understand the FDA
4 regulatory process.

5 I personally look forward to the
6 outcomes of this conference. I'm sure they will be
7 extremely helpful in providing the framework for the
8 future licensure of these tumor vaccines.

9 Thank you very much.

10 (Applause.)

11 DR. PURI: Thank you, Dr. Zoon for very
12 nice comments. I'm delighted to introduce our next
13 distinguished speaker, Dr. Edison T. Liu, Director
14 of Division of Clinical Sciences of the National
15 Cancer Institute.

16 Dr. Liu is responsible for directing the
17 internal clinical programs in cancer. Dr. Liu
18 obtained his college and medical degrees from
19 Stanford University. Prior to being recruited as
20 Director, Dr. Liu served as a member of NCI Board of
21 Scientific Advisors.

22 In 1995, he was named Chief, Division of
23 Medical Genetics at the School of Medicine,
24 University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, where

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 he was a professor in the Departments of Medicine,
2 Epidemiology and Biochemistry.

3 From 1993 until 1996, Dr. Liu was
4 Director of NCI Designated Specialized Programs of
5 Research Excellence in Breast Cancer.

6 Dr. Liu possesses excellent scientific
7 career and has contributed more than 80 papers in
8 the literature.

9 He's a member of numerous national
10 societies and serves as Associate Editor for Breast
11 Cancer Treatment and Research and Clinical Cancer
12 Research.

13 He's an editorial board member of
14 journals named Breast, Leukemia and Journal of
15 Clinical Oncology.

16 In 1996, Dr. Liu received Susan G. Komen
17 Breast Cancer Foundation Award for breast cancer
18 research. This breast cancer research award was
19 granted to him on his studies on signaling molecules
20 involved in breast cancer and leukemia.

21 This morning, Dr. Liu will deliver
22 keynote address for this workshop.

23 Dr. Liu, please.

24 DR. LIU: I want to welcome all of you
25 to the Bethesda campus of the NIH and I must say

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that I look very much forward to the proceedings of
2 today's meetings since we all encounter the same
3 issues and same problems in the intramural program
4 in our vaccine development.

5 I must state from the outset that quite
6 boldly that I am not an immunologist and I profess
7 to have assiduously avoided tumor immunology for
8 most of my scientific career. I'll admit to you
9 that as a medical student I approached Reut's
10 textbook in Immunology with the same foreboding as
11 reading Joseph Conrad's Heart of Darkness.

12 (Laughter.)

13 Thus, I viewed this very kind invitation
14 by the organizers and by Raj to deliver this keynote
15 address for this workshop on tumor vaccines with a
16 mixture of surprise and amusement. However, after
17 some discussion with him, I surmised that what the
18 organizers sought were thoughts from an impartial,
19 but interested observer, not unlike de Tocqueville
20 as he rummaged through the post-Revolutionary War in
21 America or even Walter Cronkite commenting on the
22 space program.

23 Viewed in this light, I found the
24 challenge too tantalizing to refuse. We live in
25 truly remarkable times. Our knowledge of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunologic fundamentals, coupled with the ability
2 to measure biologic molecules at picomolar
3 concentrations and to produce precise molecularly
4 agents as well as to amplify specific immune cells
5 are making tumor vaccines a clinical reality.

6 However, your very success has uncovered
7 a unique set of clinical problems rarely seen in the
8 development of standard cancer therapeutics. I have
9 full confidence that your immunological community
10 will solve the basic scientific questions pertinent
11 to tumor vaccines because the standards are clear
12 and there is a consensus as to what is acceptable
13 scientific process to address these questions.

14 However, the challenge is in moving
15 these mature basic concepts and immunologic reagents
16 into clinical testing. Unless these problems are
17 properly and carefully addressed, the promise of
18 optimal immunologic therapies reaching cancer
19 patients will be forestalled.

20 In my recent sojourn through the field
21 of tumor vaccines I have been struck by several
22 observations that distinguish vaccine development
23 from the development of other cancer therapeutics.
24 May I have the first overhead, please?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 First, there are too many possible
2 reagents to be tested for the number of eligible
3 cancer patients. Secondly, there is no consensus as
4 to the most appropriate test for immunologic
5 monitoring and to follow on the heels of that, there
6 is little consensus as to even what biologic
7 endpoints are acceptable in validating tumor
8 vaccines. Could they be immunologic responses as
9 intermediate markers or tumor responses and when we
10 talk about tumor responses, we ask what kind.

11 There is also, I think, too much
12 religious zeal based on preclinical belief systems.
13 All these I'll be addressing.

14 Addressing the first point, the
15 availability of vaccine reagents are absolutely
16 staggering, at least to somebody who has been
17 working in signal transduction as it relates to
18 chemotherapeutic agents. It seems that many
19 molecules, properly processed and presented can be a
20 tumor antigen and that in vitro modifications of an
21 antigenic peptide can render that peptide even more
22 immunogenic, just MART 1, GP100, tyrosinase, P53,
23 RASP, BCR able, MUC1, PSA, CEA and HER 2 are just a
24 few agents that are already in clinical trials.

S A G CORP.

1 Moreover, the synthesis of immunizing
2 reagents from peptides to naked DNA is relatively
3 easy as compared to the chemical synthesis of
4 chemotherapeutic agents. This encourages the
5 production of a large variety, not necessarily a
6 large quantity, but a large variety of vaccine
7 reagents and this problem is further compounded by
8 the proliferation of immuno adjuvants such as GMCSF
9 and IL-2 and of co-stimulatory molecules. The
10 commonatorial possibilities of these clinical
11 reagents are clearly unbelievable.

12 Another issue is the restricted nature
13 of how antigens bind to specific MHC molecules. In
14 effect, this significantly reduces the number of
15 eligible patients for any vaccine trials since HLA-
16 1, HLA-2 or HLA-3 all may have different epitopes
17 that it presents.

18 This number is further reduced by the
19 fact that only those cancer patients with intact
20 immune systems are expected to achieve maximum
21 benefit from tumor vaccines. This last belief has
22 prevented the application of hard-nosed go, no go
23 decisions commonly used in the prioritization of
24 chemotherapeutic agents. Vaccines that give no
25 therapeutic responses are often excused by the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 statement if we only tested our immunogen on
2 patients with earlier cancers.

3 Grouping the second and third points, I
4 have found it peculiar that despite the vast
5 knowledge base in immunology, scientists cannot
6 agree on the acceptable endpoints for the clinical
7 validation of tumor vaccines. Should there be tumor
8 shrinkage? Increase in timed progression?
9 Reduction in relapse and adjuvant treatment trials
10 or simply a laboratory immunologic response such as
11 generating a cytotoxic
12 T-cell response or increase in precursor frequency?

13 Whereas most, but not all, would agree
14 that the gold standards could be tumor shrinkage
15 and/or the generation of cytotoxic t-cells specific
16 to autologous tumor, certain realities may preclude
17 the use of these parameters.

18 For example, the inability to access and
19 to grow autologous tumor cells severely limits this
20 monitoring approach in common cancers such as
21 prostate cancer. This then mandates the
22 availability of intermediate immunologic endpoints
23 and as mentioned before, unfortunately there doesn't
24 appear to be a consensus of which endpoints are

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 acceptable as an indication of a positive laboratory
2 response.

3 Peculiarly, very few academic
4 investigators would be willing to kill a specific
5 vaccine program based on poor performance as
6 measured even by the gold standards, possibly
7 because there are just too many theoretical
8 plausible excuses for a nonresponse. For example,
9 and I think all of you have either heard or given
10 these excuses --

11 (Laughter.)

12 -- the patients are too immunologically
13 compromised. We just don't know what the right
14 laboratory test is. The wrong cytokine was used as
15 an immuno adjuvant. There is a better form yet to
16 come of the failed antigen NMI pipeline.

17 This then leads us to the third point
18 and one that is both amusing and troubling as a
19 nonimmunologist observer and that is how much
20 religious fervor is invested in the specific vaccine
21 approaches? My friend and colleague Matt Cheaver
22 stated beautifully in a recent talk when he compared
23 the current debates in clinical tumor vaccine field
24 in theologic terms. He observed that tumor
25 immunologists are all of one religion, centered on

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the belief that tumor vaccines will work. But that
2 this religion is broken up to many sects, all
3 proclaiming to be true believers. These sects arise
4 from students of influential mentors and from
5 experience with specific experimental systems, that
6 experienced scientists who conduct their animal and
7 in vitro studies with iron clad rigor would not only
8 accept, but champion results from substandard
9 clinical investigators is sociologically amusing.

10 However, that we spin wheels by not
11 setting firm endpoints for go, no go decisions in
12 clinical trials because of our personal belief
13 systems only is I think scientifically unacceptable.

14 These sound like serious problems for
15 clinical tumor vaccine development. However, I'm
16 actually very, very sanguine about the future of
17 your field, partly because I'm not in it.

18 (Laughter.)

19 In actual fact, this is because from my
20 vantage point the critical issues that I've just
21 outlined to you facing the field are not fundamental
22 scientific roadblocks. The basic building blocks of
23 your theology are real. But organizational problems
24 relating to standards and priorities persist. The
25 standards and priorities are set by consensus which

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 basically means that the vaccine community has
2 really the solutions at hand. You just have to get
3 together, spend time, discuss and have discipline.

4 You might want to consider through
5 workshops like this the development of consensus of
6 what laboratory tests may direct the developmental
7 stream and I know that that is the goal of this
8 workshop.

9 Details should include which laboratory
10 parameters against what gold standards and how these
11 labs are performed. You might also consider
12 developing an immunologic competence grading system
13 akin to the Karnofsky status that we use in cancer,
14 or the CD-4 counts used in AIDS treatment, so that
15 clinical vaccine trials can be rationally compared
16 and the condition of the patients on entry
17 standardized.

18 Next overhead, please. Lastly, you
19 should seriously consider creative and clearly out
20 of the box approaches to clinical trials design that
21 may overcome some of the problems stemming from too
22 many reagents and too few patients.

23 It is possible to test -- it is
24 impossible to test all the theoretically pertinent
25 combinations of immunogen adjuvant disease state and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunizing regimen especially in Phase 3 studies.
2 Instead, we need expedited approaches to interrogate
3 the efficacy of specific combinations.

4 Given that most vaccines have low
5 toxicity, should we not limit the goal of a Phase 1
6 vaccine study to be simply dose finding, using a
7 laboratory endpoint within plausible ranges? Novel
8 design approaches such as randomized Phase 2 trials
9 and I've listed some of the articles that you might
10 want to read permitting less stringent false
11 positive rates that is using P value, acceptable P
12 values of .1 or .2 and not relying on .05 and more
13 stringent false negative rates, a beta of .01 may be
14 in order.

15 Factorial design to accommodate
16 combinations in a most parsimonious way and
17 sequenced randomized Phase 2 studies will permit the
18 use of fewer patients per treatment arm.

19 Obviously, some of these approaches
20 should be used only in the initial exploration of
21 optimal combinations with the testing of optimized
22 regimens and standard Phase 3 studies. And
23 certainly, you'll want to make sure that the FDA and
24 other regulatory agencies buy into this concept.
25 But using these design approaches in some cases, at

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 least theoretically as outlined in these articles,
2 reduce the patient requirements by many fold.

3 Dr. Richard Simon who actually pioneered
4 many of these concepts who I believe will be a
5 member of the workshop and I suggest that you talk
6 to him about some of these ideas.

7 Earlier on I made the disclaimer that I
8 am not an immunologist, as an honest appeal to be
9 gentle on my commentary. However, I also know that
10 such a disclaimer did not help Richard Nixon when he
11 said, "I am not a crook."

12 (Laughter.)

13 So will gratefully accept any criticism
14 as an opportunity to learn and learn for my division
15 who does a lot of clinical trials and vaccines.

16 Deep down inside, however, I am very
17 jealous of you for working in a field that is likely
18 to produce a nontoxic therapy where the clinical
19 investigations are steeped in mechanism based
20 science and where there are so many challenges that
21 can be readily overcome.

22 Thank you very much. I hope you have a
23 good conference.

24 (Applause.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. PURI: Thank you very much, Dr. Liu.
2 I think Dr. Liu has set the stage of the major goals
3 of this workshop and we hope that we'll be able to
4 achieve some of those in two days of workshop.

5 Before I introduce our next speaker for
6 plenary talk, I would like to pass along a few
7 additional housekeeping information for you. Please
8 note that we will have a poster session scheduled
9 for viewing today beginning at 5:30 p.m. to 8 p.m.
10 This session will be held in the same area where the
11 refreshment breaks are held. There are 18 posters.
12 Some of them are invited posters.

13 I would like to thank poster presenters
14 for your participation and sharing your data with
15 all of us, particularly in a very, very short
16 notice. All poster presenters are requested to be
17 present at their posters from 5:30 p.m. to 8 p.m.
18 today, although the posters will be left in place
19 for additional viewing tomorrow until 3 p.m., but
20 poster presenters are not required to be there
21 except for today.

22 Please note that lunch will be on your
23 own each day. The first floor cafeteria on the
24 basement level and the second floor cafeteria will
25 be open. There are additional cafeterias in the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 campus, building 31, building 45 and building 1.
2 They are located about 5 minutes walking distance
3 from here. It may take slightly longer because
4 there is a lot of construction going on around the
5 campus.

6 The map of the campus is provided at the
7 Registration Desk. Please look for these at the
8 Registration Desk. If you should need further
9 assistance throughout the workshop, please feel free
10 to speak to anyone at the Registration Desk or with
11 me.

12 Now it gives me great pleasure to
13 introduce our speaker for the plenary talk today,
14 Dr. Ralph Steinman. Dr. Steinman is a professor and
15 senior physician in the Laboratory of Cellular
16 Physiology and Immunology and Henry G. Kunkel
17 Professor at the Rockefeller University. After
18 obtaining his medical degree from Harvard University
19 and medical training at Mass. General Hospital and
20 research training at Rockefeller University, Dr.
21 Steinman has held various positions at the
22 Rockefeller University. Dr. Steinman is an editor
23 and advisory editor of several distinguished
24 scientific journals including editor of Journal of
25 Experimental Medicine. He's a member of many

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 national and international societies and scientific
2 advisory groups of many national and international
3 panels and institutes.

4 Dr. Steinman has served as a chairperson
5 of several keystone symposia including one on the
6 dendritic cells. Dr. Steinman has given numerous
7 honorary lectures and received various distinguished
8 national and international awards.

9 This year alone, Dr. Steinman has
10 received Foley medal from Cancer Research Institute,
11 honorary doctorate from University of Innsbruck,
12 Austria and Max Planck award from Alexander von
13 Hamble Foundation.

14 Dr. Steinman has done pioneering work on
15 dendritic cells. As we know, that it is DC that has
16 generated a new tremendous interest of
17 immunologists. The review article by Jacques
18 Banchereau was also a speaker and present in the
19 audience today. And Dr. Steinman published in
20 Nature this year and it has become an important
21 article referring to dendritic cells.

22 With this note I would like to invite
23 Dr. Steinman to tell us everything about dendritic
24 cells and the antigen presentation.

25 Dr. Steinman, please.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. STEINMAN: Thank you very much, Raj.
2 Thank you for bringing so many right people to the
3 right place at the right time.

4 You know the joke, ladies and gentlemen,
5 about the role of plenary speakers at meetings.
6 It's a bit like a corpse at a funeral. You have to
7 have one, but you don't expect them to say very
8 much.

9 (Laughter.)

10 I'll try to overcome that reputation,
11 but who knows.

12 I'd like to actually discuss three
13 topics that we're going to be considering in the
14 next two days. One are some results, the first
15 results in our lab on the active immunization of
16 humans, particularly volunteers, normal, healthy
17 adults with dendritic cells. This work has been led
18 by Nina Bhardwaj and Madhav Dhodapkar at the
19 Rockefeller and we're working closely with Gerald
20 Schuler in Erlangen in Germany.

21 Then I want to look at the processing of
22 cellular derived antigens by dendritic cells. There
23 are many different forms of cells that can be
24 handled by dendritic cells. I'll be going over the
25 work at Kayo Inaba and I have been doing in the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 mouse and I'll refer also to the work of Nina
2 Bhardwaj, Birthe Sauter and Matthew Albert in the
3 human.

4 And the third topic I want to think
5 about with you is the manipulation of dendritic
6 cells in vivo. I know this conference is dedicated
7 to the use of ex vivo manipulated dendritic cells,
8 but ultimately we really want to go to the dendritic
9 cell as it exists in situ and we certainly have to
10 keep in mind their physiologic features as we design
11 ex vivo studies.

12 Now before getting into these three
13 topics I thought I'd just remind us of a few things.
14 The first is that -- is diagrammed here.
15 Immunologists often are able to identify antigens,
16 clinically significant antigens, but we lack
17 adjuvants, to use those adjuvants to properly
18 control the immune system.

19 Melanoma is certainly the best example
20 in human cancer. We have lots of candidate antigens
21 and we need to know how to use these antigens to
22 elicit strong T-cell mediated immunity with the
23 assumption that if we were to do that, we'd have a
24 significant anti-tumor effect.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 HIV is the classic example now of a
2 chronic viral infection where we've known of several
3 antigens for so many years and yet we still don't
4 have a candidate vaccine. That means we still don't
5 have a way of actively immunizing individuals to
6 HIV-1. And then there's the reciprocal thing in
7 autoimmunity, particularly a disease like insulin
8 dependent diabetes where we're going to be
9 identifying auto antigens and we're not going to
10 know how to use those antigens to turn the immune
11 system off.

12 So the potential role of the dendritic
13 cell system is to give us a new way of using
14 particular antigens or cells to manipulate the
15 immune system.

16 The reason they're so attractive at this
17 stage, I guess can be boiled down to these three
18 points. One is that they're very potent, that is,
19 relatively small numbers of cells, relatively small
20 amounts of antigen induce strong T-cell mediated
21 immunity. And all kinds of T-cells immunity,
22 depending on the type of antigen and the type of
23 stimulus that's delivered with the dendritic cell.

24 They prime T-cells. They initiate
25 immunity both in vitro and in vivo and they do this

S A G CORP.

1 without any other adjuvant. They are nature's
2 adjuvant.

3 And then finally is that this is the
4 physiologic system that can be used to manipulate
5 the immune response. And let's just go over some of
6 these features of their physiology. They're located
7 at body surfaces. The best studied are the skin and
8 the lung and what you're looking at here in brown
9 are the dendritic cells in the rat airway
10 epithelium. This is a micrograph that was given to
11 me by Patrick Holt. And you see that relative to
12 the number of the nuclei stained in blue, the number
13 of round dendritic cells isn't very great. The
14 actual number in there, the epithelium isn't known,
15 but it's relatively small. But their size and their
16 distribution is just right to pick up antigens that
17 are entering into the body.

18 And then, of course, they're very
19 abundant in the T-cell areas of the lymph node
20 tissue. This is a low power of a mouse lymph node.
21 The blue is a
22 T-cell marker, CD4 and the brown is the MAC Class 2
23 type of antigen presenting molecule. And what you
24 see is that the T-cell area is just loaded with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 these stellate intensively positive MAC 2 expressing
2 cells.

3 And again, there's only one or two percent dendritic
4 cells in an entire lymph node suspension, but you
5 can see that their size and their distribution is
6 just right for manipulating the T-cell component of
7 the immune response.

8 This is just a little cartoon
9 summarizing the distribution of dendritic cells in
10 vivo at body surfaces in the interstitial spaces of
11 many organs such as the dermis. In the circulation,
12 particularly the afferent lymphatics and in the
13 lymph node tissues, particularly, but not
14 exclusively in the T-cell areas.

15 And again, it's known that if one were
16 to administer an antigen into the skin and isolate
17 these veiled cells as they were first called in the
18 lymph they would be carrying the antigen in a form
19 that's highly immunogenic for T-cells. Or also if
20 one injected an antigen into the skin and isolated
21 the dendritic cells from the lymphoid tissue they
22 too would be the main site in which immunogenic
23 antigen is available for presentation into T-cells.

24 And then there are the experiments as
25 we'll go over in a moment where one takes dendritic

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cells themselves and pulses them with antigen and
2 you can observe them in experimental animals, homing
3 to the T-cell area and initiating the immune
4 response there.

5 Now there are many components to this
6 physiology in vivo. I've just broken down some of
7 them. Their mobilization, that is, how do you
8 mobilize dendritic cells from tissues that are
9 already there and how do you increase their numbers?
10 Their maturation, this is a complex process that I'm
11 going to come to next that greatly influences many
12 of their functions. Their migration, how do they
13 know to go to the right place at the right time and
14 then something that I'm going to end on in my talk
15 is their short life span once they're fully mature,
16 their mortality and I'm going to emphasize that even
17 though we're injecting dendritic cells in relatively
18 small numbers, in turn, a very small fraction of
19 these actually make it in a live state to the T-cell
20 area. So we're working now at a very suboptimal
21 range in terms of the efficacy of the dendritic
22 cells we inject.

23 So a little more on this topic of
24 maturation before I get into these three topics,
25 it's proper that I introduce before. This is a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 concept that was first described by Gerald Schuler
2 in studies of Langerhans cells. But it's come up
3 again and again with dendritic cells that have been
4 isolated from various tissues such as the rat lung,
5 human blood, mouse spleen, the various bone marrow
6 cultures that we're using to generate dendritic
7 cells and even the blood monocyte system that's very
8 popular now. And basically the dendritic cell has
9 two phases of function, one called immature in which
10 it's actively taking up antigens and another called
11 mature where it's a very potent T-cell stimulator.
12 I think the term mature, it's just a word, is
13 appropriate because this is the end stage of
14 dendritic cell development. It's often very short-
15 lived, living only a day or two and it's fully
16 functional in terms of its characteristic function
17 that is potent T-cell stimulation.

18 And it's a cell that we can't convert
19 into any other cell type so it seems to be the
20 terminal stage of differentiation.

21 Now in terms of antigen uptake there are
22 a number of ways that these immature dendritic cells
23 can capture antigens. Phagocytosis is one of them
24 and we'll be discussing the uptake of apoptotic and
25 necrotic cells. They can take up pinocytosis --

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 they can take things up just by fluid phase
2 pinocytosis and lucifer yellow is a convenient
3 experimental marker, but this is the way dendritic
4 cells are handling standard soluble proteins which
5 are really relatively an efficient way of delivering
6 antigen and often given in doses of hundreds of
7 micrograms, even milligrams per ml.

8 And then there are the more interesting
9 pathways of absorptive uptake and I've only listed a
10 couple of them, but this really does look like an
11 expanding area in many ways whereby dendritic cells
12 may selectively bind things. And this may be very,
13 very important in terms of targeting antigens to the
14 immature stage of dendritic cell development.

15 Maturation is induced by a number of
16 things, lipo-polysaccharide being a typical one in
17 the lab, living bacteria, certain viruses like
18 influenza and then a number of inflammatory
19 molecules such as IL-1 and members the TNF family.
20 The TOL family has been implicated because of a
21 molecule called RP 105 which is very TOL-like in its
22 structure and antibodies to RP 105 can stimulate
23 dendritic cell maturation.

24 Now this matured dendritic cell is
25 really exquisitely differentiated to initiate

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunity. They have a number of adhesion and co-
2 stimulator molecules. These are just a few. They
3 resist the immuno suppressive effects of IL-10.
4 They express a repertoire of chemokine receptors
5 that's quite selective and what's interesting is
6 that the corresponding chemokines are expressed
7 constitutively in the T-cell area it seems.
8 And then finally they have very high levels of MAC
9 peptide when this being measured directly.

10 I just illustrate some of these features
11 of dendritic cell maturation. This is the prototype
12 Langerhans cell and it's stained for MAC Class 2 in
13 green and a lysosomal marker in red. This is the
14 mature Langerhans cell driven just simply by placing
15 skin cells in culture and what you see is that most
16 of the MAC 2 molecules are on the surface in green
17 and that there are relatively few lysosomes.

18 Now this cell is a very potent
19 stimulator on the mixed leucocyte reactions and
20 mitogen responses and super antigen responses, but
21 it doesn't capture any soluble antigens. It stopped
22 endocytosing. It's put out all its MAC onto the
23 cell surface it seemed. But it derives from the
24 resident immature cell in the skin where it's just
25 the reciprocal occurs. That is, the MAC 2 is

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 sitting within the vacuolar system in the right
2 place to accept MAC peptide. And in fact, some of
3 the new monoclonal antibodies that are being
4 developed to look at MAC peptide complex formation
5 such as the very lovely reagent that's come out of
6 Ron Germaine's lab called C4H3. It's a peptide from
7 heneg lysosome presented on mouse MAC 2. You can
8 follow the formation of MAC peptide complexes in
9 dendritic cells. It begins within these MAC 2
10 compartments and then moves to the cell surface and
11 is very abundant there.

12 So the immature dendritic cell is
13 designed to capture and make MAC peptide complexes
14 and then the mature dendritic cell is the one that
15 presents these to the T-cell system.

16 And just to look at the expression of
17 co-stimulatory molecules this happens to be from the
18 mouse. A few of them are listed on the X axis here,
19 CD 86, CD 54, CD 40. And what we're looking at are
20 immature dendritic cells from mouse bone marrow
21 cultures and then in parallel dendritic cells that
22 on the last day of culture received a stimulus of an
23 nanogram from MLPS.

24 What you see is that the maturation
25 stimulus greatly increases the level of CD 86, CD

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 54, CD 40 and these are the mean florescent index of
2 all the profiles in the culture. So this again is
3 really just the right cell to stimulate the T-cell.

4 Now one last introductory slide and that
5 is the rationale for using dendritic cells as
6 nature's adjuvant has come out of many, many
7 experiments in mice which were designed as shown
8 here. Dendritic cells are removed from one animal,
9 either from the lymphoid organs or they're grown up
10 from progenitors, particularly the bone marrow. And
11 then they're charged with antigen ex vivo and then
12 they're
13 re-infused into syngeneic animals. And what one
14 observes, initially, was the induction of CD 4
15 immunity, but several of the people in this audience
16 have pursued this in the context of CD 8 T-cell
17 immunity.

18 And then there have been much prettier
19 assays of immunogenicity, that is the induction of
20 protection against tumors, protection against viral
21 and bacterial infection and also the elicitation of
22 autoimmunity when there's an appropriate auto
23 antigen being delivered.

24 Now what was shown in these experimental
25 systems was that the dendritic cell that one

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 injected was really controlling the immune response
2 so by using MAC restriction F-1 animals were
3 immunized and if one used parental strain dendritic
4 cells only those T-cells that saw the MAC of the
5 dendritic cell that you injected, only those T-cells
6 were immunized. So the dendritic cell is not just
7 schlepping in antigen for the host to present, it's
8 directly stimulating the recipient. And it's not
9 surprising therefore that one typically needs live
10 dendritic cells to see this immunogenicity.

11 So now let's get on to human studies.
12 Now there are many ways that are being used to make
13 the dendritic cells. These are diagram of the two
14 most popular ones, I think. One is to grow them
15 from progenitors in the CD 34 fraction and the two
16 key cytokines are GM-CSF and TNF although other
17 cytokines may be used to maintain the progenitors
18 such as CK ligand and flt3L. And what happens in
19 these cultures is that the dendritic cells grow up
20 in these distinctive aggregates and if one looks as
21 the aggregates, they often have their MAC 2 within
22 these intracellular compartments. So this would
23 seem like the right stage to be offering them
24 antigens.

S A G CORP.

1 I just want to stress the very lovely
2 work that came from Christophe Coe and Jacques
3 Bancherau that there may be two types of -- there
4 are two types of dendritic cells being generated in
5 these cultures, one with the features of Langerhans
6 cells and the other which are called monocyte-
7 derived dendritic cells or dermal-type dendritic
8 cells. And we really don't know a lot yet about the
9 relative immunizing function of these two types of
10 cells. The one functional difference that's known,
11 for example, is that at least in a tissue culture
12 system these monocyte-derived dendritic cells have a
13 capacity to stimulate B-cells as well as T-cells and
14 the Langerhans cells lack this capacity.

15 Now the other system that's being used
16 is the blood monocyte and this is being expanded
17 into a typical matured dendritic cell. This is the
18 one that we're using in our studies. It's an
19 accessible population. It's the most homogenous
20 preparation of dendritic cells that we can make in
21 the lab and it's also the most potent. And what's
22 done is that the precursor population is cultured in
23 GM-CSF and IL-4 for several days. We are just using
24 plastic adherent cells currently as the precursor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 population so it's enriched in monocytes, but hardly
2 pure.

3 And then you get a cell that has many of
4 the features of an immature dendritic cell. It's
5 not exactly like the Langerhans cell, but it's not
6 fully differentiated and to do that we had a
7 maturation stimulus and for clinical studies we use
8 just a condition medium that's derived from
9 monocytes applied to immune complexes. And then you
10 get the mature dendritic cell. And what's
11 diagrammed here in black is that that's the cell
12 that has very abundant MAC 2 on the surface as well
13 as membrane co-stimulatory molecules and just a few
14 lysosomes inside the cell in red.

15 And then there's some markers whose
16 function that we don't know, but they're very useful
17 for monitoring the maturation process and three of
18 them are surface expression of CD-83, member of
19 interglobulin super family, p55 which is a
20 cytoplasmic protein of unknown function, thought to
21 be an actin bundling protein by sequence somology
22 and then a new marker that's found within the
23 lysosomal system called DC-LAMP and it was
24 identified in DARDA at the time Jacques Banchereau
25 was directing that institute. It was recently

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 described in a paper in Immunity by Serge Le Bec, et
2 al.

3 As I understand it, this marker which
4 was kindly provided to us by Drs. Le Bec and Sam
5 Salen, this will be available from Immunotech. It's
6 an intercellular antigen and the lysosomes of these
7 mature dendritic cells and it's quite a lovely
8 marker.

9 Just one word about the heterogeneity of
10 dendritic cells. Heterogeneity is just a word. We
11 really need to define it in clear terms and not be
12 frustrated by it. There are many reasons for it.
13 Stage of maturation is one of them. I've mentioned
14 the possible differences between Langerhans cell
15 type versus monocyte-derived dendritic cells and
16 finally, there's this one that's often called
17 myeloid v. lymphoid or, by Jung Jin Lu, DC-1 versus
18 DC-2.

19 This distinction is the one we have the
20 least handle on right now, but it could be very
21 important. The idea is although there's still not a
22 lot of data, is that the lymphoid cell is more
23 specialized for immune regulation and possibly
24 deletional tolerance rather than immune activation.
25 So we still don't have our hands on buckets of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 lymphoid-type dendritic cells, but this may be an
2 important thing for the future.

3 Okay, so here's what our cells look
4 like. They're large, stellate, actively motile
5 cells and we've selected the mature stage for our
6 studies because the mature dendritic cell is the one
7 that presents peptides very efficiently to CD8
8 positive autologous T-cells.

9 Now the point is that when these cells
10 are cultured in the absence of the cytokines in
11 which you reared them, they maintain this shape and
12 their -- all the differentiated functions that I
13 outlined. And that's very important. In other
14 words, they appear to be terminally differentiated.

15 This is just a look at some of their
16 features. MLR stimulation, even though it seems
17 like a relatively crude assay is really a very
18 reliable one. These mature dendritic cells at very
19 low doses, less than one dendritic cell per thousand
20 allogenic T-cells stimulate very strong MLRs, easily
21 greater than 50,000 counts, measured at Day 5 of the
22 MLR, not the usual Day 7. So they're very potent
23 stimulators and really all the patients that we have
24 studied give you dendritic cells that stimulate MLRs
25 like this. We have a standard T-cell donor as our

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 allo, but frankly, almost all allogeneic T-cells
2 will give you the same results.

3 This is just the phenotype of the cells
4 and I was a little upset, but these have been gated
5 for the large cells and we have small cell
6 contamination because we're using adherent cells as
7 the starting population and the frequency of small
8 cells in our preps is anywhere from 15 to 75
9 percent. But the large cells reliably have this
10 phenotype. The background is less than a log on the
11 facts. CD83 staining is very strong on most of the
12 cells, generally over 95 percent of the cells and
13 the levels of HLA-DR and CD86 are very high. This
14 is a directed immunolabel.

15 And then CD14 which was present
16 initially at high levels on all the monocytes can't
17 be detected either on the cell surface or
18 intracellularly.

19 Okay, so now for the study. We've
20 injected about 2 million mature monocyte derived
21 dendritic cells subcutaneously in the upper arm.
22 They've been pulsed with KLA as a priming protein,
23 tetanus toxoid as a boosting protein or the
24 influenza matrix peptide that's immunodominant on
25 HLA2.1.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And then controls, as I'll go over in a
2 moment are to first inject the patient with
3 dendritic cells that have not been pulsed with
4 antigen or we have given just antigen in the absence
5 of dendritic cells to four individuals.

6 We pulse the antigens on during the
7 maturation phase, that final two days of culture in
8 the monocyte condition medium.

9 And then this is just the little schema
10 of when we measure immune responses and the various
11 phases of the study. First, there are base line
12 studies where we measure immune responsiveness by
13 the various parameters that I'll go over, at least
14 two and usually four times over a several month
15 interval.

16 Then we give the control dendritic
17 cells, that is, those that don't have any antigen on
18 them and we measure the immune parameters again at
19 Day 7 and Day 30 and then we gave the antigen pulsed
20 dendritic cells and looked at the responses at Day
21 7, 30 and beyond. And we've just done a single
22 primary injection so far in nine healthy adults.

23 So this is what all the volunteers did
24 in response to KLA. We're measuring the
25 proliferative response to KLA just in PMBCs taken

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 from the volunteer. And you see we use 10 in 1
2 microgram per ml of antigen. We find at higher
3 doses there is a proliferative response from the
4 preparation we use without any priming of the
5 individual. So you see here are several base line
6 pre-injection values are relatively low following
7 the control dendritic cells. There's no change and
8 then when you give the KLA pulsed dendritic cells,
9 you see a nice boost in the proliferative response,
10 including to a very low dose of antigen a microgram
11 per ml.

12 And then these are proliferating cells,
13 are CD4 positive because if you deplete CD4 positive
14 cells prior to assay you lose the response.

15 And so this is the summary data for all
16 nine individuals, D1 through 9, measured pre-
17 injection following the injection of control
18 dendritic cells or following the injection of KLA
19 pulsed dendritic cells. And you see that all nine
20 individuals show a nice injection of KLA specific -
21 - KLA dependent proliferation.

22 The four individuals who received KLA
23 only. This was a dose of 4 micrograms. Were not
24 primed. And the dose of 4 micrograms was chosen
25 because that would be the dose of KLAs that would be

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 present in the inoculant if we had not washed the
2 cells at all prior to injection.

3 Now we've also looked at the CD8
4 response by virtue of having the influence of matrix
5 peptide on these dendritic cells and many of our
6 donors were HLA2.1 positive so they could respond to
7 the matrix peptide and several were HLA2.1 negative
8 so that they shouldn't respond to the matrix
9 peptide.

10 And what we did were LE spot assays for
11 gamma interferon producing cells and these LE spot
12 assays were done on PBMCs taken from the patient and
13 this is just an overnight culture. So there's no
14 expansion of the PBMCs in culture for a long period
15 as if often required to see CD8 immunity in humans.
16 We're seeing this response directly out of the
17 blood. And the way these assays are set up we
18 always have a control peptide. This is the gag
19 peptide from HIV that's dominant for HLA2.1 and the
20 matrix peptide. And what you see is that in all the
21 individuals that we injected who were 2.1 positive,
22 there's a boost in the gamma interferon secreting
23 cells. These are all CD8 positive cells rather than
24 CD4 positive cells.

S A G CORP.

1 And it's antigen specific, that is, you see a good
2 matrix peptide, but not with gag peptide. The 2.1
3 negative individuals didn't respond and the people
4 who got 4 micrograms of peptide subcutaneously
5 didn't respond.

6 And then this just shows you another
7 assay that is the capacity to generate CD8 positive
8 killer cells that are specific for the viral peptide
9 or an influenza infected target. And what we're
10 doing is we're measuring the matrix specific CTL
11 response in a chromium release assay in T-cells that
12 are boosted with autologous dendritic cells for 7
13 days in culture. And controls are done with and
14 without antigen. These are the responses with
15 antigen. And what you see is that following the
16 injection of control dendritic cells, that is,
17 without matrix peptide, there is very low levels of
18 lysis, but then when they get the MP pulsed, peptide
19 pulsed dendritic cells, you get very nice boosts in
20 their responsiveness as measured by a CTL assay.

21 And furthermore, you can now detect a
22 specific HLA2.1 MP peptide tetramer binding in these
23 recall responses in vitro. So we're definitely
24 priming the CD8 compartment with the single dose of

S A G CORP.

1 monocyte derived dendritic cells given
2 subcutaneously.

3 So this is just a little summary of the
4 way many of these ex vivo studies are being planned.
5 One first has to get a hold of dendritic cells and
6 generally these are being generated from precursors
7 rather than being taken fresh out of the donor
8 blood.

9 And these are grown up in various ways.
10 We're currently emphasizing the monocyte derived
11 pathway. You then have to charge them with antigens
12 of therapeutic importance and then you reinfuse them
13 and have to measure the T-cell response.

14 Now there's a term that's coming up
15 called translational research with this kind of
16 experiment. I hate this word. It is not
17 translational research. Just because it was done in
18 a mouse doesn't mean it was just a bunch of
19 translation to human. This is research. Every bit
20 of this is really serious research and there's an
21 awful lot to do. We have to learn how to make the
22 different dendritic cells in the different subsets
23 and test them. We have to come up with ways to
24 deliver antigens and to measure the efficacy of that
25 antigen delivery to the dendritic cells and we have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 to learn how to measure the human T-cell response
2 which is not exactly easy. It's not been that easy
3 to do that and many of the newer assays such as LE
4 spots and MAC tetramer binding are really just
5 wonderful in this regard. We're going to have to
6 see how they behave and what they mean.

7 Okay, on to the second topic and that is
8 the delivery of antigens to dendritic cells. I'm
9 looking around for a clock. There's not one in this
10 room that I can see. I think a very important
11 breakthrough was made in my colleague Nina
12 Bhardwaj's lab, particularly by a really brilliant
13 M.D. Ph.D. student, Matthew Albert and we were all
14 working with Birthe Sauter who is a dermatologist
15 from Erlangen. And what they were looking at was
16 the response to influenza in HLA2.1 positive
17 individuals in tissue culture. It was known from
18 Nina's work that dendritic cell and HLA2.1
19 individuals and in other individuals were very
20 potent APCs for CDA positive CTL response.

21 So what they did was they put the source
22 of the influenza peptide in an HLA2.1 negative cell
23 and that cell was either infected with influenza or
24 it was transfected with the influenza matrix gene.
25 What they found is that if they made these A2.1

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 negative cells undergo apoptosis that the dendritic
2 cells would take them up and present them on Class 1
3 to autologous CD8 cells. And a subsequent study
4 with Bob Darnell has shown that a candidate tumor
5 antigen in perinea plastic disease, cerebellar
6 degeneration antigen called CDR is also presented in
7 this system in this way.

8 Now they had to use the immature stage
9 of dendritic cell development to get good
10 presentation and it turns out that the immature
11 stage has a vitronetrin receptor, alpha V beta 5
12 that seems to be involved in the uptake of apoptotic
13 cells.

14 And what's fascinating about this system
15 is that the dendritic cells present antigens on
16 Class 1 whereas if you use monocytes as the APC,
17 they do not present the antigen on Class 2, even in
18 rapid chromium release assays. So there seems to be
19 a very fundamental difference between the dendritic
20 cells that can present antigens through this
21 exogenous pathway and the macrophage which scavenges
22 and destroys antigen through this pathway.

23 Now my colleague Wanaba and I have been
24 looking at this using the mouse system because there
25 we have antibodies to MAC peptide complexes. So you

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 can put the source of the peptide in one cell and
2 the MAC on the dendritic cell and then start
3 monitoring this capture of peptide from cellular
4 antigens rather directly.

5 And the monoclonal we used was the first
6 monoclonal of this kind that sees an MHC peptide
7 complex. It's called a Y-Ae because the presenting
8 molecule is an I-E molecule and the peptide is
9 derived from the I-E product, another MAC molecule
10 by chance. The beauty of this system is that this
11 MAC peptide complex is expressed at very high levels
12 on dendritic cells in mice that carry both IE-alpha
13 and the I-Ab genes.

14 So what we did was simply put the
15 peptide in one cell which, of course, was a B cell
16 since that expresses a lot of I-E and then we used
17 the dendritic cell from I-Ab of mice. Now we found
18 that the dendritic cells, in order to capture the
19 peptides from the B cells had to be at the immature
20 stage of development and in addition they had to
21 receive a maturation stimulus for us to see very
22 nice MAC peptide complex formation.

23 So this is what it looks like. You can
24 barely see on the Y axis is the staining with the Y-
25 Ae monoclonal antibody and all the staining is

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 specific. It's not seen with the isotype control
2 and on the X axis is a staining for a maturation
3 marker, in this case, CD86.

4 So if you offer these cells the
5 preprocess peptide you see a nice signal developing
6 on these dendritic cells that have matured during a
7 one day culture with the peptide or with the dying
8 cell. And then this is the signal where you give
9 them B-blasts and these are apoptotic B-blasts and
10 these are B-blasts that are killed with antibody in
11 complement. Now both apoptotic and necrotic cells
12 are processed very efficiently in this system
13 whereas in the Class 1 presentation system that Nina
14 Bhardwaj and her colleagues have studied, only
15 apoptotic cells are presented through the exogenous
16 pathway. And then here you see what happens if you
17 separate the B-blasts from the dendritic cell in a
18 transwell. There's very little formation of MAC
19 peptide and here's what happens if you add the B-
20 blast to the already matured dendritic cell. It no
21 longer captures these cells to make the MAC peptide
22 complex.

23 And this is what the cells look like --
24 studied by confocal microscopy. These are studies
25 that we've been doing with Ira Melman's lab at Yale

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and in particular with a wonderful graduate student
2 named Shannon Turley. So this is a single immature
3 dendritic cell stained for MAC 2 in green. So you
4 see these MAC 2 rich intercellular compartments and
5 in red is a marker for the B cell that we're feeding
6 to the dendritic cell and you see the immature cell
7 as just taking up a lot of B cell fragments and in
8 the overlay you see that many of the B cell
9 fragments have localized to the MAC 2 compartments.

10 Now I must say this is not a typical
11 example. Most of the immature dendritic cells only
12 have a few fragments, but we've just done this,
13 taken this example to emphasize the targeting of the
14 B cell to the MAC2 compartment.

15 Now what one can do is isolate these
16 cells, sort of block this uptake phase by culturing,
17 doing the whole culture in the presence of ammonium
18 chloride which blocks processing of these
19 phagocytosed fragments. So you can then purify the
20 dendritic cells, remove the ammonium chloride block
21 and show that the cells then rapidly form MAC
22 peptide complex on the surface.

23 The efficiency with which dendritic
24 cells can make MAC peptides from other cells is
25 really impressive, we feel. We've quantitated --

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 tended to quantitate the level of IE protein that's
2 in the B cells that we offer to the culture and the
3 total amount of protein is about .3 nanomolar and
4 most of that protein is actually going to the
5 macrophages that are eating more actively than the
6 dendritic cells in the culture.

7 And this is the level of preprocessed
8 peptide one micromolar that gives a comparable
9 signal to that level of protein. So it seems that
10 delivering the protein in a dead cell, a dying cell
11 is a much more efficient way than giving peptides.
12 And as you know, peptides have been used for a long
13 time to try to manipulate the immune system of
14 mammals and they're not very effective, not very
15 efficient. It may be that by learning to target
16 dying cells to dendritic cells we're going to make a
17 huge leap of efficacy.

18 Now to some extent this efficacy is due
19 to the efficiency of phagocytosis. That's an
20 absorptive uptake mechanism, but we showed many
21 years ago that that gives you roughly a thousand to
22 three thousand fold enhancement over fluid phase.
23 But the trouble is that just gets the protein into
24 the cell, so the dendritic cell must be very
25 efficient at converting that protein to the MAC

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 peptide complex relative to delivering the
2 preprocessed peptide to the very same cells.

3 So just to sum up some of the antigen
4 handling properties of dendritic cells, they seem to
5 have a number of receptors that are going to be very
6 interesting to study as delivery system and possibly
7 the vitronetrin receptor is going to be very
8 important for apoptotic cells because that's the one
9 that's expressed selectively on immature cells and
10 antibodies to it block uptake of apoptotic cells.
11 They express very high levels of MAC peptide and
12 what may be qualitatively very special about a
13 dendritic cell is this exogenous pathway. It's been
14 found not only in apoptotic cells, but also by
15 Sebastian Emovengrena with immune complexes. So it
16 can be engineered so it takes up immune complexes,
17 but it won't present on Class 1 and the dendritic
18 cell is very efficient in that regard.

19 The M2C compartments are of great
20 interest and it's becoming clear that their function
21 is regulated very beautifully in the dendritic cell,
22 so for example, in the maturation stimulus is given,
23 this inhibitor, cystatin C disappears from the M2C
24 and that allows cathepsin S the cystine proteus as
25 blockbust the cystatin C to be more active and that

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 degrades the invariant chain and for one thing allows
2 the MHC peptide to move to the surface.

3 Finally, there are markers like DC LAMP
4 whose function we really don't know yet.

5 Okay, now for the last topic, that is
6 the mobilization and manipulation of dendritic cells
7 in vivo. This is one way of looking at this pretty
8 substantial question and that is to think of the
9 dendritic cell as being of several types of
10 proliferating progenitor, a precursor such as the
11 monocyte that doesn't really have any features of
12 dendritic cells, but can become one. Cells that are
13 now starting to look like dendritic cells, the
14 immature ones, but still need a maturation stimulus
15 to be the potent stable T-cell stimulator. And then
16 finally this last stage wherein the dendritic cells
17 undergo apoptosis. And I think all these stages
18 must be kept in mind as we work with these cells and
19 as we try to devise ways of manipulating them in
20 vivo.

21 There's already a lot that's known. For
22 example, flt3L seems to be a very active stimulus
23 for mobilizing various precursors in immature forms
24 of the dendritic cell from the proliferating
25 progenitor. There's evidence now that among site

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 can start developing into a dendritic cell when it
2 moves across an endothelium and also receives a
3 phagocytic stimulus. These are studies of Gwen
4 Randolph that was recently published in Science.

5 The multi-drug resistance receptor,
6 oddly enough, may be involved in the mobilization of
7 Langerhans cells from the skin, drugs like Reserpine
8 and Verapomil are very effective at blocking the
9 immigration of Langerhans cells from the organ
10 explants of human skin.

11 Then there are the members of the TNF
12 family, that for one thing prolong the viability of
13 dendritic cells. And then they're going to be
14 select chemokines that influence the targeting and
15 movement of dendritic cells in vivo. I just want to
16 finish with this last point. That is, when we
17 inject dendritic cells, at least these mature and
18 immature ones, they're very rapidly undergoing
19 apoptosis in vivo. So we're really losing a lot of
20 their efficacy.

21 So the way this experiment was done is
22 one injects dendritic cells into a mouse and these
23 can be syngeneic or I want to show you what happens
24 in the allogeneic system because what happens is
25 that when the dendritic cells are injected, they're

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 actually processed by the recipient's dendritic
2 cells. So we take dendritic cells from an I-E
3 bearing mouse and we inject it into a C57 Black 6
4 mouse and then we look for the development of the Y-
5 Ae epitope on the recipient dendritic cells and what
6 you see is massive development of the Y-Ae epitope.
7 This is a high power view of the lymph node, the B
8 cell follicles, the edge of it is in brown and the
9 Y-Ae expressing cells are scattered about the T-cell
10 area and if you look at this by fax, you see that
11 when you inject an I-E bearing dendritic cell into
12 the appropriate strain of mice, there's a nice
13 development of MAC peptide complex on most of the
14 dendritic cells marked by CD11C or marked by the
15 recipient MAC 1-Ab.

16 Now if you look for the donor dendritic
17 cells you see very few. You can do this in a
18 syngeneic or allogeneic system. You can label the
19 cells with a tracking dye or you can look for the I-
20 E positive cells. So when we inject 500,000
21 dendritic cells, you're lucky to see a thousand Day
22 2. But yet all of the dendritic cells in the
23 recipient seem to be expressing MAC peptide complex.
24 So somehow they're capturing peptide from the live
25 dendritic cell that we had injected.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So what we interpret is that the
2 dendritic cells one injects in afferent lymph,
3 they're known not to make it into efferent lymph,
4 that they die very quickly upon reaching the lymph
5 node. The T-cell may rescue them because those
6 cells express CD-40 and the T-cells they active
7 FCD40 ligin and that works to rescue dendritic cells
8 in vitro.

9 But if they're not rescued, they're
10 actually processed by the recipient cell and this is
11 massive MAC peptide complex formation and we really
12 do not know yet what the functional consequence of
13 this is.

14 So again to summarize some of the things
15 that may be going on when we're injecting dendritic
16 cells in vivo and injecting different forms of cells
17 in vivo, there are different ways that the dendritic
18 cells can capture these and include capturing the
19 dendritic cells themselves and setting into motion
20 this very efficient processing on to MAC 2 and
21 probably on to MAC 1.

22 So this is my final summary slide. It's
23 a little dark. I'm sorry it's not showing well.
24 But really to emphasize that there are two very
25 different pathways of white cell differentiation,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 one that leads to scavenger cells or macrophages and
2 another that leads to very specialized antigen
3 presenting dendritic cells. And it's very important
4 to make these distinctions. If there's one thing
5 that really must not be done is to refer to an
6 entity called the macrophage/dendritic cell. There
7 is no such thing. We wouldn't know about all these
8 features about dendritic cells if they hadn't been
9 separated from macrophages and most of what we know
10 about dendritic cells are simply not seen in
11 macrophages. So we really have to overcome this
12 very traditional barrier in immunology and focus on
13 these two different pathways of differentiation
14 because they're very different.

15 The dendritic cell is dedicated to
16 antigen presentation. It works in vivo, including
17 in humans and it's very efficient. It's vacuolar
18 system is very specialized to capture and process
19 antigen. In fact, it's so devoted to antigen
20 presentation that it seems to sacrifice itself to
21 the process.

22 Thank you.

23 (Applause.)

24 DR. PURI: Thank you, Dr. Steinman. It
25 was an excellent review of dendritic cells.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Everything we wanted to know. And very good data
2 you have presented today.

3 Due to the paucity of time I think we
4 have not have any questions at this time. Dr.
5 Steinman will be here. He is chairing a session
6 this afternoon as well. If you have questions,
7 please feel free to ask him while he's here.

8 Time is 9:45 and it's time for our 15
9 minute coffee break. Please note as I indicated
10 before that complimentary refreshments are provided
11 and the set up is located in the main area lobby of
12 building 10. For invited speakers there is coffee
13 in the back stage so please stay here and have
14 coffee in the back. Thank you very much. We shall
15 return in 15 minutes.

16 (Off the record.)

17 DR. KEEGAN: Thank you, Raj. I'm Dr.
18 Patricia Keegan with the Division of Clinical Trial
19 Design and Analysis in the Office of Therapeutics
20 and in contrast to what you received in your
21 packages, we've slightly changed the order of
22 presentation. We thought it might fit better to
23 provide an overview of the clinical development
24 process first as a lead in to several of the next
25 speakers and so the first presentation will actually

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 be our discussion of the clinical development
2 process.

3 In this presentation what I'm attempting
4 to do is first to provide an overview of the
5 development process for anti-neoplastic agents which
6 is traditional cytotoxic chemotherapy as a
7 background. I'm sorry for those clinicians in the
8 audience for whom this is rather basic material, but
9 because the audience is rather diverse we wanted to
10 provide a general overview in this regard to discuss
11 a little bit the areas in which FDA feels that they
12 are important to have interactions with drug
13 developers throughout that clinical development
14 process and what the goals and purpose of these
15 interactions are and finally to provide some
16 thoughts on special considerations in the area of
17 tumor vaccine where there are distinctions or
18 differences in the approach to the development
19 process for this product class which I would like to
20 highlight or contrast as relative to the traditional
21 approach for cytotoxic chemotherapeutic agents.

22 The clinical development process has
23 been described as proceeding through a series of
24 phases of drug development and all the oncologists
25 in the audience will recognize the traditional Phase

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 1, 2 and 3 trial process. FDA also recognizes and
2 has inscribed in its regulations a Phase 4
3 development process which occurs after product
4 licensure.

5 In Phase 1 development, the purpose for
6 cytotoxic agents is really a determination of a dose
7 range which might be appropriate for future studies,
8 and also to get some sense of the toxicity profile
9 in human subjects. Because we expect that these
10 agents will be toxic, these studies are generally
11 conducted in patients with cancer where the risks
12 are felt to be balanced against the potential
13 benefits.

14 The considerations that one has to have
15 in these trials is the number of patients to be
16 exposed relative to the toxicity profile and to try
17 and make this a judicious balance of the benefits
18 and risks, that the monitoring for toxicity be
19 appropriate relative to that expected toxicity which
20 has been elucidated in preclinical animal testing.
21 And in addition, that one should perform
22 pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic analysis and
23 data collection to assist in the development of the
24 Phase 2 trials.

1 David, could you advance it? The next
2 trial of development after an assessment of the dose
3 range which is tolerable in human subjects is to
4 address trials looking at an initial determination
5 of the activity of the product in a fairly well
6 defined and homogenous population. However, because
7 Phase 1 studies are often done in very advanced
8 patients, there may need to be further elucidation
9 of an appropriate dose range. These again are
10 studies conducted in patients with malignancy,
11 although generally in patients with measurable tumor
12 so that the activity assessments can be made. And
13 again, considerations here are the number of
14 patients to be exposed, generally ranging from 20 up
15 to as many as a 100 with a focus on efficient
16 determination of activity, again careful monitoring
17 and characterization of the toxicity profile so that
18 the monitoring process can be focused in future
19 trials on those most relevant aspects of toxicity.

20 Next slide. The goals of the Phase 3
21 study then are to further characterize the safety
22 and effectiveness of a product at this point in
23 comparison to a control group. The standards of
24 effectiveness vary depending upon what that control
25 group is. One should need to look at equivalent or

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 superior activity relative to an efficacious or
2 active control and clearly one would need to show
3 that there is superior activity relative to an
4 observational or an inactive or placebo type
5 control. It bears, in fact, no standard therapy
6 available for the disease being investigated.

7 The efficacy standards for Phase 3
8 trials are that the trials be adequate and well
9 controlled. Well controlled would mean that the
10 trials be balanced in the arms for relative
11 prognostic variables and confounding factors which
12 might confound the analysis of effectiveness. And
13 there should, at the end of the trial, be evidence
14 of a net clinical benefit or of an effect on a
15 surrogate which is reasonably likely to predict
16 clinical benefit.

17 The determination of net clinical
18 benefit must be evaluated, however, in the setting
19 of the currently available therapy for that disease
20 and it must take into account the natural history of
21 the disease or the clinical course following the
22 standard therapy for a specific neoplastic subtype
23 and stage of disease.

24 Potential endpoints which have been used
25 in the development of anti-neoplastic agents have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 most importantly looked at survival benefit,
2 disease-free survival or time to treatment failure
3 benefits, durable complete responses, durable
4 overall responses, meaning complete and partial
5 tumor responses or beneficial effects on disease
6 related symptoms and/or quality of life.

7 Again, the endpoints need to be selected
8 in consideration of what alternative therapy is
9 available and what the goals -- what the potential
10 benefits of those alternative therapies are.

11 Following the licensure or marketing
12 registration of a drug, FDA notes that there can be
13 additional studies to elucidate additional aspects
14 of the product. Post-marketing studies further
15 assess safety and/or efficacy information about a
16 particular product and they may be required as a
17 condition of an accelerated approval. Some examples
18 of Phase 4 commitments might be to obtain
19 information on late, sustained or delayed effects to
20 determine their course, their severity, their
21 incidents. One might further evaluate the
22 pharmacokinetics safety and effectiveness in
23 specific subpopulations and areas -- this has been a
24 very active area of interest with the FDA to
25 evaluate whether or not patients who are elderly,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the pediatric population, those with significant
2 organ impairment may have a different safety and
3 efficacy profile and often this is best
4 characterized in later studies after the initial
5 effectiveness from marketing has been obtained.

6 I want to speak a little bit about FDA
7 interactions with clinical drug developers. The
8 initial interaction with FDA are typically before
9 the product has gone into any human subjects and
10 maybe the so-called preinvestigational new drug
11 development application stage. These conferences
12 are held to reach agreement on the information
13 sufficient to assure identity, purity and potency of
14 the product which is a requirement for initial
15 studies in humans often. It's necessary to reach
16 agreement on appropriate preclinical studies to
17 determine what might be a reasonable initial dose
18 integration of therapy. There are some differences
19 in the approaches that are used in classical anti-
20 cytotoxic agents -- or in antineoplastic agents in
21 the Center for Drugs where they have specified that
22 acute toxicity data from two species involving one
23 rodent and one nonrodent as well as histopathology
24 results in one species be provided as that type of
25 information. Because of the nature of the products

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 regulated in the Center for Biologics while this
2 approach may, in fact, be appropriate for some
3 drugs, one of the areas of focus is that the animal
4 models, in fact, be relevant and the extent to which
5 there is not -- the extent of information that's
6 necessary in animal models may or may not have to be
7 more heavily supplemented with in vitro data which
8 will support the safety and the initial dose in the
9 clinical studies.

10 In making a request for a pre-IND
11 conference it simply requires a letter sent to the
12 agency requesting that the conference take place and
13 a listing of the proposed dates of availability. In
14 an attempt to minimize the resources of the Agency
15 so that we can focus on all aspects of trial
16 development, we are now moving in the Center for
17 Biologics towards teleconferences as the most
18 efficient way to conduct these pre-IND conferences.
19 At the time of the conference we will begin to -- at
20 the time of the request we will begin to schedule a
21 teleconference and subsequently we would expect a
22 pre-IND package of materials to be provided as the
23 basis of information upon which FDA will be able to
24 provide some guidance.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 This package should contain a
2 description of the product, biochemical
3 characterization to the extent possible and a
4 description of the manufacturing process in brief.
5 There should be relevant in vitro data. Where
6 appropriate reprints of materials should be
7 submitted. Animal toxicology and pharmacology
8 studies should either be summarized or the proposals
9 for such studies should be summarized and the
10 clinical protocols should be outlined in sufficient
11 detail so that one can make an assessment as to
12 whether or not the information provided would
13 support the proposed initial clinical study.

14 In addition, one should provide a
15 specific agenda and the questions which need to be
16 addressed during the course of that conference so
17 that we can make efficient use of time. It would be
18 anticipated that the Agency would review the package
19 in its entirety prior to the conference and the
20 majority of the time could be spent focusing on
21 those specific questions.

22 And here's an address where the pre-IND
23 materials would need to be sent. According to
24 recent regulations these materials need to be
25 received at least four weeks prior to the conference

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 call and the location of the address of the
2 materials might vary depending upon the product.
3 For products which are live vaccine, gene therapy
4 products, which is not specifically the topic of
5 this conference, the Office of Vaccines would be the
6 primary office of review. For almost all other
7 tumor vaccine materials it would be directed to the
8 Office of Therapeutics Research and Review.

9 Once the IND has been submitted and
10 clinical studies initiated, there are a series of
11 additional meetings which FDA which schedule with
12 the sponsor, a clinical drug developer to insure
13 that there's efficient drug development to
14 facilitate the drug review process and to provide
15 input in that process. There is in the regulations
16 a specification for an end of Phase 1 meeting under
17 very specific conditions. That is, for products
18 that would meet the designation of Subpart E and I
19 will cover what that Subpart E designation is in a
20 subsequent slide.

21 The purpose of an end of Phase 1 meeting
22 would be concurrence that the drug, in fact, meets a
23 Subpart E designation, review of the evidence of
24 activity in Phase 1 and to reach agreements

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 regarding the design of a typical trial and
2 standards for approval.

3 Next slide. That end of Phase 1 meeting
4 is clearly the exception. Ordinarily, the Agency
5 would not expect to meet with a sponsor until the
6 end of a Phase 2 trial in which that initial
7 evidence of activity has been determined. At the
8 time of the end of Phase 2 meeting, we would review
9 the results of the Phase 1 and 2 studies to
10 determine and the evidence of clinical activity
11 gleaned from those studies. We would attempt to
12 obtain agreement on the design of Phase 3 or pivotal
13 trials and we would again review the standards of
14 approval in the drug setting, given the natural
15 history of the disease and the alternative therapies
16 available.

17 Following the completion of one or more
18 pivotal trials, the Agency would then typically meet
19 to discuss the results of those clinical trials.
20 Again, the purpose would be to review the results of
21 the trials and of the overall development plan and
22 the entire body of evidence available which supports
23 the safety and activity of the product and to
24 discuss the future directions. For trials which
25 appear not to have been successful, one might

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 discuss alternative trial plans versus whether or
2 not there appears to be sufficient information for
3 submission of a license application.

4 Now the end of Phase 3 trial may or may
5 not incorporate the aspects of a pre-IND, a new drug
6 application or pre-BLA, biologics license
7 application meeting. The focus of that type of
8 meeting would actually be to determine the required
9 contents and format of a license application to
10 insure that the application will be complete and
11 fileable upon receipt. The other aspect would be to
12 insure that the organization will allow an efficient
13 review process.

14 If indeed a license application is
15 filed, another aspect of meetings with the Agency
16 would be at the time following an advisory committee
17 meeting to discuss the recommendations of the
18 advisory committee and to discuss whether or not
19 there are needs for additional trials or data either
20 prior to licensure or following the licensure as
21 post-marketing commitments.

22 With regards to a license application or
23 drug application review process, there are specific
24 time lines which have now been codified. At the
25 time of receipt of the application the Agency has 45

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 to 60 days after receipt depending upon the status
2 assigned to it, to determine whether or not the
3 application is indeed materially complete, well-
4 organized and reviewable.

5 During this period, the assignment of
6 the review designation is made. And there are two
7 reviewed designations which may occur. The first is
8 a priority review which would be a 180-day period in
9 which the Agency would review the entire contents of
10 the application and develop an questions, comments
11 or requests for additional information. This
12 priority review assignment would be designated if
13 the underlying disease being treated was serious and
14 life threatening and that the drug itself was
15 treating a serious aspect of that disease and
16 represented a significant advance in the treatment
17 of that disease.

18 Other applications would receive a
19 standard designation which would mean that the
20 review process of that application would be
21 completed within a 10 to 12 month cycle. For
22 standard applications, we are, as an Agency moving
23 towards a 10-month cycle over a period of several
24 years.

S A G CORP.

1 There should be on-going communication
2 between the review team and the sponsors for easily
3 addressable questions during the review process.
4 While major requests for information may not always
5 occur during that period of time, definitely any
6 areas which could be clearly easily addressed in
7 communication would be handled and there is for most
8 new applications new chemical entities, new
9 biological entities an advisory committee
10 presentation at the time of the initial approval and
11 depending upon the therapy, the aspect and any other
12 particular areas where the Agency feels they need
13 guidance of the scientific expert committee.

14 Again, we reviewed that there are
15 several times when the Agency would ordinarily meet
16 with the sponsor. There are several ways in which
17 the Agency would communicate including specific
18 written requests and also telephone and video
19 conferences are options for communication during the
20 process.

21 David? Next slide. And again, the
22 basis for approval is clearly that there be
23 replicable demonstration of efficacy with acceptable
24 safety and adequate and well-controlled clinical
25 trials. And the entire license application should

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 allow one the ability to write a product label that
2 defines an appropriate patient population for
3 treatment and provides adequate information to
4 enable safe and effective use of the drug.

5 Now there are some specific provisions
6 for expediting drug development or facilitating drug
7 development which the Agency has codified again in
8 the regulations. The special provisions for serious
9 and life threatening diseases in which cancer would
10 clearly fall are the expedited review or Subpart E
11 process accelerated review and both of these have
12 been subsumed into the new legislation of the FDA
13 Modernization Act which also incorporates fast track
14 as a review process.

15 Expedited review is actually a process
16 which occurs under the investigational new drug
17 development phase, so prior to licensure and
18 submission of a license application, expedited
19 review is a little bit something of a misnomer. It
20 is more like an expedited or facilitated drug
21 development process where there is clear evidence of
22 activity in the early phases of disease. It is
23 intended for serious and life threatening diseases
24 and by this we mean serious and immediately life
25 threatening diseases often. The procedures are in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 place to expedite the development process, to take
2 something which has already shown evidence of
3 activity even in the earliest trials and to rapidly
4 bring it into the definitive trials which will
5 determine, which will confirm that evidence of
6 effectiveness as well as provide additional safety
7 data.

8 The regulations encourage early and
9 repeated contacts with FDA staff. It provides for
10 the potential for marketing approval based upon an
11 adequate efficacy demonstrated in an adequate and
12 well-controlled clinical trial. So one thing this
13 does not do is lower the standards for efficacy. It
14 basically shortens the drug development process.
15 And it says this could be done in Phase 2 trials
16 were appropriate in the setting where a reference
17 group or natural history of the diseases well are
18 known, otherwise it would imply that this would be
19 done in a controlled trial.

20 And further evaluation would typically
21 be conducted under Phase 4 studies as a rapid
22 development process might leave many holes in our
23 understanding of the entire safety profile or in
24 less common aspects of adverse events.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 The accelerated approval process is
2 present both in the biologics regulations and in the
3 drugs regulations for the marketing. It is again
4 intended for serious and life threatening diseases
5 in areas where therapy appears to provide a
6 meaningful therapeutic benefit over therapies which
7 are in existence for treatment of that aspect of
8 disease.

9 The approval would be based upon a
10 surrogate end point or an end point other than
11 survival or irreversible morbidity. The approval is
12 conditional which means that if subsequent studies
13 show that the evidence of efficacy has not been well
14 established, the approval itself may be withdrawn.
15 The approval may carry additional restrictions to
16 insure safe use which would be determined based upon
17 the safety profile available at the time of approval
18 and whether or not there are needs for additional
19 limits on use of the drug until further data are
20 available to suggest that it could be expanded or
21 lifted.

22 The FDA Modernization Act of 1987
23 incorporates many aspects of these in one location
24 in the regulations. It is intended for this aspect
25 of facilitating drug development, again, is intended

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 for serious and life threatening diseases which
2 demonstrate the potential for unmet medical need.
3 In such diseases one may -- a drug developer may
4 request fast track designation for their product
5 which incorporates again many aspects of
6 considerations of expedited development and
7 facilitated development as would be appropriate
8 given the data available.

9 There should be -- there is under this
10 designation a condition for a rolling application
11 which is to file completed sections of the
12 application as they become available, rather than at
13 a single point in time which may facilitate the
14 application submission to the Agency, may allow the
15 Agency, if time permits, to review the application
16 more rapidly and however, the fast track designation
17 does not clearly imply that rolling BLA submissions
18 or rolling NDA submissions will, in fact, occur.
19 That is made as a separate decision at the time when
20 sufficient data are available. And applicants who
21 were interested in finding out more about fast track
22 for tumor vaccine drugs may contact Bette Goldman at
23 the Center for Biologics at this number.

24 Now in terms of tumor vaccines, clearly
25 this product class is different from traditional

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cytotoxic agents. And as such, one might need to
2 consider what aspects of the development process
3 really need to be handled a little bit differently
4 and these are some thoughts as to where one might
5 consider some flexibility or some different
6 approaches in the area of drug development.

7 The first would be in the objectives of
8 the Phase 1-2 study. As you've already heard from
9 Dr. Liu and will likely hear from others, the
10 identification of a Maximum Tolerated Dose which is
11 the goal of most cytotoxic agents is very unlikely
12 to be the goal for tumor vaccines and clearly, the
13 identification of a pharmacologically effective dose
14 or an optimal biologic dose would be a much more
15 reasonable goal in this field. The rationale for
16 this would really be two-fold, the first being that
17 biologically active doses may well occur below the
18 maximum tolerated dose and also in terms of
19 feasibility it's technically infeasible often to
20 even determine what that maximum tolerated dose is,
21 so that even if one were interested in determining
22 what could happen in a worse case scenario it's just
23 not possible to do it.

24 Next slide. In terms of design issues,
25 the dose selections which are going to be evaluated

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 in the initial studies should really cover a very
2 broad range to characterize the relationship between
3 dose and immunologic activity. Rather than in the
4 traditional dose escalation paradigms, what we would
5 like to see is a proposal which incorporates both
6 the potential for toxicity based upon prior
7 knowledge of the drug class in preclinical studies
8 for toxicity and also for the potential to observe
9 the actual differences between dose cohorts so that
10 what one is really trying to do is not so much
11 evaluate the differences in the toxicity level, but
12 the differences in the immunologic activity level
13 between dose cohorts. So we may consider in drugs
14 which appear to have a very safe profile for
15 toxicity, if that's not an oxymoron, that a wider
16 dose escalation than one would consider for
17 traditional cytotoxics would be much more reasonable
18 to employ.

19 But critical to this would be the fact
20 that we need to have assays which are able to
21 discriminate the immunologic responses between
22 different dose levels so we have to have assays
23 which are not just an on-off, but might actually be
24 able to distinguish between different levels of an
25 immunologic response.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Next slide. Again, as you've already
2 heard, the --I'm sorry, go back one. There. The
3 patient populations for these studies likely will be
4 somewhat different. Immuno competent patients are
5 necessary in order to be able to observe the immune
6 response. Unfortunately, we don't really have a
7 good handle on how one defines an immuno competent
8 patient and I fully concur with Dr. Liu that it
9 would be well to try and elucidate what factors are
10 important for identifying patients who have a like
11 level of immunocompetents, what level, what factors
12 might identify patients might be used to identify
13 such patients. At this point in time, it's
14 generally looked on as patients who have not been
15 heavily treated or have other very gross parameters
16 of immune competence and the more precisely we can
17 elucidate that, characterize it and characterize
18 patient populations more likely we will be able to
19 compare cross studies.

20 The underlying disease should not be a
21 rapidly progressive one so unlike the traditional
22 cytotoxic studies which are done often in end stage
23 patients or refractory patients, we need a
24 population that's going to be able to remain on
25 study long enough to receive sufficient exposure to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 develop an immune response. And it may be
2 reasonable to conduct this either in very early
3 stage of disease or even in the adjuvant settings
4 often from almost the initial studies.

5 Measurable or evaluable tumor has
6 generally not been considered necessary because one
7 frequently with this class of products has not
8 expected to see evidence of anti-tumor responses.
9 The Agency is not meaning to discourage those people
10 who wish to look in that area, but if that's clearly
11 not the goal of the study, it's not necessarily a
12 useful restriction to place on eligibility.

13 The other issue is that one might rather
14 than do the traditional three to six patients per
15 dose level cohort, consider again to justify the
16 size of the dose level cohorts based upon the number
17 of patients and the amount of information necessary
18 to be able to distinguish between groups of patients
19 and cohorts. If three patients isn't enough, if six
20 patients isn't enough, do 10, do 12, whatever is
21 justified based on the assay system that will be
22 able to detect differences between the dose level
23 cohorts and these sorts of things should drive the
24 design of the studies.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Next, please. In terms of the analytic
2 methodology, again traditional cytotoxic drugs that
3 look at an NDT prediction generally have very
4 limited and descriptive analytic methods in their
5 early trials. We would expect for this product
6 class that there actually be much more description,
7 both of the analytic methodology and the basis for
8 many of the aspects of the trial design to determine
9 whether or not it's really a reasonable approach.

10 We would like to see detailed
11 description of the immunologic assays to be used in
12 the study as the basis for determining the initial
13 surrogate of activity, including the controls and
14 performance characteristics of those assays. We
15 would like to see a basis for the number of patients
16 per dose level and the overall sample size and we
17 would like and this seems like it should be an
18 understood thought, but we really need to know what
19 it is that people think is the measure of success of
20 biologically active or optimal biologic doses based
21 upon the immune response.

22 In the Phase 2 studies, again, continued
23 exploration of dose schedule, route of
24 administration, a variety of factors. And to
25 highlight what Dr. Liu also said, the exploration of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 some of these aspects might best be done in a
2 randomized Phase 2 study that compares the multiple
3 strategies contemporaneously. This eliminates the
4 confounding variables that we see in a series of
5 Phase 2 studies would each study one small aspect.
6 It allows us to make comparisons across groups when
7 they're randomized and entered. It removes one
8 additional level of complexity and confounding
9 nature between the groups.

10 Among those multiple strategies which we
11 would encourage to be explored would be approaches
12 with various immuno adjuvants, cytokines, multiple
13 antigens, but we think that it's profitable to
14 actually explore those contemporaneously and across
15 groups.

16 Next. Finally, for the Phase 3 studies,
17 these products have generally been conducted in --
18 been evaluated in the adjuvant setting or in minimal
19 residual disease states and because of this, the
20 studies have generally looked at survival,
21 progression- free survival and these types of end
22 points need to be evaluated in internally controlled
23 and randomized trials. Again, because of the
24 confounding factors of comparing a cross study to
25 reference group, historical controls, we have, we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 would say as a general statement that for studies
2 look at survival and progression-free survival that
3 these need to be randomized internally controlled
4 studies.

5 The efficacy standards again, I can't
6 say this enough, adequate and well-controlled
7 trials. For the initial approval, if the setting is
8 one of an adjuvant disease one of a minimal residual
9 disease state, and if the body of evidence from the
10 prior trials really doesn't show any clear evidence
11 of clinical benefit as one might see with tumor
12 responses in traditional cytotoxic chemotherapeutic
13 drug development, then it's likely that more than
14 one Phase 3 or controlled randomized trial, whether
15 one calls that Phase 3 or not, will probably be
16 necessary. However, for supplemental approvals, one
17 could use the activity in the initial disease
18 setting and the initial approval setting to be
19 supportive of activity in a second setting and we
20 are open to creative suggestions as to how to
21 consider multiple trials which replicate these
22 effects.

23 An initial about surrogate end points
24 and I think needs to be addressed. The Agency has
25 recognized that durable complete and partial tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 responses are acceptable as surrogate end points in
2 most, not all, but most malignancies, advanced
3 malignancies.

4 Time to progression has been accepted in
5 a surrogate in some areas including adjuvant
6 settings and the hormonal therapy of prostate
7 cancer. On occasion, this has also been considered
8 an outright measure of efficacy, but it depends upon
9 the setting.

10 Next slide. But one thing that needs to
11 be understood is that effects on serologic tumor
12 associated antigens, that is, effects on CA-1 25
13 level of PSA, for instance, have not been considered
14 to be surrogate end points which would be sufficient
15 to demonstrate efficacy. Effects on reduction in
16 cells containing a gene marker for disease to some
17 area below the limit of detection has not been
18 considered to be an end point which is reasonably
19 likely to predict clinical benefit. Clearly,
20 immunological responses against tumor antigens has
21 not been accepted as a measurement, as a surrogate
22 which is reasonably likely to predict clinical
23 benefit. That is not to say that such end points
24 may not ultimately be validated, but at this point
25 in time they are not considered to be areas which we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 would accept as an Agency as an end point which
2 could support efficacy as the primary evidence of
3 efficacy for clinical trial.

4 I think that -- no, skip that, Dave. I
5 think I'm going to skip some of these in the
6 interest of time. Okay. Yes, that's it. And now I
7 think I will introduce the next talk which will be
8 Dr. David Essayan from the Division of Clinical
9 Trials, Design and Analysis who will be speaking on
10 the preclinical safety and efficacy studies.

11 (Applause.)

12 DR. ESSAYAN: I'm just loosening up the
13 mike. Can everybody hear me with this? Yes. Okay.
14 I'm sort of allergic to podiums. Let me just give
15 it a shot from here.

16 Well anyway, this is the preclinical
17 development part of vaccine programs. I'd like to
18 introduce you to the Pharmacology Toxicology Branch
19 in the Office of Therapeutics at CBER. This branch
20 does all the clinical pharmacology, as well as all
21 the toxicology for the Office of Therapeutics. We
22 also function in a consultative function to the
23 Office of Vaccines, as well as the Office of Blood.
24 In addition, a number of the medical officers here
25 do clinical review in their fields of expertise.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 But for Pharm Tox issues, these are the folks that
2 you're going to wind up speaking with.

3 We see a number of different strategies
4 in the Office of Therapeutics in the context of
5 tumor vaccines. I'd like to go over a couple of
6 them, briefly. Obviously, modified and unmodified
7 autologous or allogeneic tumor cell products. There
8 are also soluble tumors, associated antigens in the
9 absence or presence of a wide variety of adjuvants.
10 The tumor-associated antigens themselves can be of a
11 variety of different sources. They can be
12 recombinant, they can be purified. There are a
13 number of different types of tumor-associated
14 antigens that we have seen.

15 Additionally, we see tumor-associated
16 antigens of all these varieties and combinations
17 loaded into a variety of antigen-presenting cells
18 including the dendritic cells that have been
19 discussed and will be discussed further during this
20 conference. There are gene modified products such
21 as tumor cells and then what I group here as
22 "other", oncolytic viruses, viral vectors for gene
23 therapies, etcetera. Despite this wide variety of
24 different product, our general goals in the
25 preclinical safety program remain remarkably the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 same. The first goal is to recommend an initial
2 safe starting dose and dose regimen in human
3 subjects.

4 Now here it's important to note that the
5 safety is a function of each component of the
6 vaccine as well as the interaction of the component
7 such as with a tumor-associated antigen and the
8 adjuvant selected. The preclinical study should
9 help to define not just the dose activity
10 relationship, but also the dose toxicity
11 relationship, the differences between these two both
12 in terms of dose and in terms of organ and tissue
13 specificity as well as the effects of route and
14 schedule of administration on the activity and
15 toxicity. An example of this would be an
16 intradermal or IV versus sub-cut administration
17 where different antigen presenting cells in
18 different mechanisms may actually be invoked.

19 The second goal of the program is to
20 identify potential target organs for toxicity
21 related to the product. In vitro tissue binding
22 and/or target antigen distribution studies,
23 whichever is appropriate for the individual product,
24 are a critical first step. These studies may guide
25 gross and histopathologic studies which may, where

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 appropriate, guide subsequent safety pharmacology
2 studies which will look at specific organ related
3 toxicities. These studies should help
4 to define the dose dependence of the toxicity, the
5 relationship to exposure and importantly, the
6 potential for reversibility of these toxicities.

7 The third goal is to identify
8 appropriate serologic and immunologic parameters for
9 monitoring safety and efficacy of the product in
10 human subjects. Now this will be discussed quite
11 widely during the two days of this conference. I
12 would just like to say that the quality, quantity
13 and relative contributions of the cellular arm, the
14 humoral arm as well as the potential role of
15 complement may be delineated in the toxicology
16 program and may be correlated to outcomes in the
17 preclinical models which may provide helpful
18 insights for development of the product.

19 The fourth goal is to identify potential
20 at-risk populations for administration of the
21 product. Such identification may be guided by both
22 target organ toxicity data and the outcome of
23 product administration in the context of animal
24 models of disease. Now there are a number of pros
25 and cons with animal models of disease. The cons,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 obviously, there's often a limited historical data
2 base for the background on the animals. Oftentimes,
3 these animals are quite ill and interpretation of
4 toxicologic data in that context may be challenging.
5 However, in animal models of disease, good, strong
6 animal models of disease, these data may provide
7 relevance for specific disease states that are
8 difficult to come by other mechanisms and so I would
9 encourage you to consider this.

10 The next goal is to help determine an
11 acceptable risk benefit ratio for human subjects.
12 Now risk benefit may vary according to the
13 indication as well as the intended target population
14 and in fact involving pre-clinical and clinical
15 experience with the product may over time shift the
16 risk benefit ratio during product development.

17 And the last is to help elucidate the
18 mechanisms of action of the product. An optimal
19 dose regimen needs to consider both the
20 immunogenicity of the vaccine, the specific immune
21 response desire related, in part, to which arm of
22 the immune system is felt to be most important for
23 the biologic activity of the product and
24 importantly, as Dr. Keegan and as Dr. Liu have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 alluded to, the immune status of the subjects to be
2 studied.

3 What types of preclinical studies are
4 available to us? Preclinical studies that should be
5 considered for all vaccine products include local
6 tolerance studies, pharmacodynamics which in this
7 particular context may be translated into
8 immunogenicity studies, safety pharmacology where
9 organ specific toxicities have been identified in
10 your single and repeat dose toxicology studies and
11 can be pursued. If there is suspicion for a
12 particular organ related toxicity for that
13 individual product, in fact, the safety pharmacology
14 studies may be incorporated into other single or
15 repeat dose toxicology studies.

16 Other studies, other preclinical studies
17 that should be considered where appropriate for
18 specific vaccine programs include ADME studies,
19 particularly related to some of the viral products
20 that we see; pharmacokinetics, carcinogenicity,
21 genotoxicity and reproduction and developmental
22 toxicities where applicable to the individual
23 product.

24 There are two relevant ICH documents
25 that may help guide our view of the preclinical

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 safety program, the M3 document and the S6 document.
2 I should note that the S6 document does not
3 specifically cover cellular and gene therapies.

4 The M3 document states that toxicology
5 should be performed in two relevant mammalian
6 species, one nonrodent with a dose intensity that is
7 greater than or equal to that anticipated in the
8 clinical trials. It further states that where
9 appropriate ADME genotoxicity, local tolerance and
10 certain carcinogenicity studies should be performed
11 prior to the initiation of Phase 1. In the context
12 of tumor vaccine, I would particularly focus on
13 local tolerance studies.

14 Reproduction and developmental
15 toxicology should be conducted as appropriate for
16 the population that is to be exposed and for the
17 product. Special consideration for pediatric
18 administration including the availability of
19 reproduction and developmental toxicology,
20 genotoxicity, carcinogenicity and potentially
21 studies in juvenile animals in order to target the
22 developmental stage in your preclinical program.

23 Having said those things a step-wise
24 development program is acceptable, so called rolling
25 toxicology and importantly the safety evaluation may

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 be considered on a product specific basis if
2 existing paradigms are either inappropriate or
3 irrelevant in the context of the particular product.

4 The S6 document reiterates a number of
5 these major issues. Preclinical safety testing
6 should consider selection of relevant animal
7 species, the age of the animals, the physiologic
8 stage of the animals, normal versus disease models,
9 the delivery as well as the stability of the test
10 material under the conditions used.

11 The routed frequency of administration
12 should parallel as closely as possible that proposed
13 in the clinical trial. Optimally, exposure to the
14 product should define a no observable effect level,
15 a no observable adverse effect level, the
16 pharmacologic effect and as Dr. Keegan has
17 mentioned, the MDT is often less critical in the
18 context of immune response as compared to the
19 optimal biologic dose. In the preclinical models,
20 however, MDT determination, if possible, may give
21 you an idea of the window that you have above
22 optimal biologic dose. Where appropriate, safety
23 pharmacology can be incorporated into the design of
24 toxicology studies.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Studies should try to include a recovery
2 period for assessment of late toxicities and
3 potential reversibility. I'll get back to this
4 issue on a subsequent slide.

5 And again, a flexible science based
6 approach designed to address issues specific or
7 unique to each product should be utilized for the
8 pre-clinical safety evaluation.

9 What of our major concerns looking at
10 any new application in the Office of Therapeutics?
11 Injection site reactions are very commonly seen
12 while most of these are minor, some of them can be
13 quite major. We have actually seen grade 4 local
14 toxicity related to certain vaccine related products
15 and so this should be one of the major focuses of
16 the toxicology program.

17 Induction of autoimmunity is often
18 discussed and here we need to think in terms of the
19 antigen specificity for the individual vaccine
20 product, its distribution and the concept that the
21 majority of these vaccine protocols in one way or
22 another are seeking to overcome self-tolerance for
23 that individual antigen or group of antigens. At
24 the point when efficacy, when biologic activity is
25 established, one has presumably overcome in some

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 measure tolerance to self. At that point, the
2 threshold for generation of an autoimmune response
3 based on the natural distribution of that antigen is
4 theoretically possible and should be a focus of the
5 toxicology program.

6 Hypersensitivity to vaccine components,
7 we have seen this rarely, but it is of some concern
8 to us when we do see it. Systemic toxicity and
9 pyrogenicity are seen with a variety of these
10 products, as is regional lymphadenopathy following
11 administration of the product.

12 Cytokine release syndrome has been seen
13 with a number of these products. This can be a
14 severe and in fact life-threatening complication and
15 should be monitored preclinically and also if seen
16 then specific considerations in any clinical trials
17 be undertaken. The last consideration here is the
18 potential for induction of disease which will be
19 discussed in some detail later on during this
20 workshop.

21 Major limitations to the preclinical
22 studies include species specificity and by this I
23 mean to denote both variations in the
24 immunophysiology between the preclinical species

1 chosen and humans as well as species differences
2 between the tumor tissues being studied.

3 Two other aspects are a direct outgrowth
4 of the direction of most toxicology studies, that
5 being difficulty in modeling long-term toxicities.
6 This can be, in part, related to immunogenicity of
7 the product that is counter regulatory, so to speak
8 to the biologic activity of the product in your
9 model, in your animal model, as well as difficulty
10 in adequately assessing the potential for
11 reversibility of the toxicity.

12 So having made these points my
13 conclusions would be that the preclinical program
14 needs to address the safety and biologic activity of
15 the product as well as the mechanism of action of
16 the product and that unique properties of individual
17 products must be considered on a product-specific
18 basis for the preclinical program.

19 Thank you very much for your attention.

20 (Applause.)

21 DR. KEEGAN: Okay, our next speaker will
22 be Dr. Raj Puri who will be speaking about product
23 development issues.

1 DR. PURI: If I may have the first
2 slide, please? First slide, please? Can somebody
3 turn the slide on, please?

4 Well, while the slides are being turned
5 on I will continue, I guess.

6 After you have heard general and
7 clinical issues that should be considered for tumor
8 vaccines, clinical trial development from Dr. Keegan
9 and types of preclinical studies that should be
10 considered from Dr. Essayan, my task is to summarize
11 what should be done or considered for product
12 development for tumor vaccines.

13 Before I do that I would like to list
14 some of the types of tumor vaccines as soon as the
15 slides turn on, but if they don't, I will continue.
16 One of the types of tumor vaccines are cellular
17 tumor vaccines and the second class is multi-antigen
18 preparations. The third type are purified proteins,
19 synthetic peptides and other gangliosides. The
20 fourth type could be a type as vital and plasmid
21 vectors which could be injected into a patient
22 within or outside the liposomes.

23 Cellular tumor vaccines which is my
24 first slide is characterized --

25 (Laughter)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Cellular tumor vaccines are comprised of
2 autologous tumor cells or allogenic tumor cells and
3 these tumor cells could be unmodified or maybe
4 modified by chemical agents such as dinitrophenol or
5 they could be irradiated before they're injected
6 into the patient to boost the immune response.

7 These tumor cells may be also -- there
8 it is. That was my first slide.

9 (Laughter.)

10 May I move to the second slide? These
11 are some of the types of tumor vaccines that are
12 indicated, cellular vaccines, multi antigen
13 preparation, purified proteins, synthetic peptides.
14 Others such as gangliosides and vital and plasmid
15 vectors, and the liposomes.

16 Cellular tumor vaccines as I already
17 said could be autologous allogeneic tumor cell, they
18 could modified with a DNP and combined with an
19 adjuvant or growth factors before they're injected
20 into patient to boost immune response. These tumor
21 cells could also be genetically modified to secrete
22 factors, cytokines, chemokines and surface
23 expression of MHC antigen and other co-stimulating
24 molecules before they're injected to the patient to
25 boost immune response.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Other cellular tumor vaccines include
2 lymphocytes that could be derived from peripheral
3 blood or from the lymph nodes and other cells are
4 antigen presenting cells or antigen pulse dendritic
5 cells, fibroblasts or other cells and these cells
6 could also be derived from peripheral blood or from
7 the bone marrow.

8 These cells could be pulsed by a variety
9 of different agents such as RNA, tumor cell lysates,
10 synthetic peptides, multi-antigen preparations and
11 so on. And in some situations these cells could be
12 co-cultivated by another cell such as Orosophila
13 cells which are designed to express an immune
14 stimulatory molecule such as IKN-1 and other immune
15 obligatory molecules.

16 Multi-antigen preparations include tumor
17 cell lysate, cell tumor antigens or secreted tumor
18 antigens, tumor antigens which are either conjugated
19 with KLH or as such.

20 These preparations could be injected to
21 the patient as such. They could be mixed with the
22 adjuvants or in some situations they could be used
23 to pulse antigen presenting cell such as a popular
24 dendritic cell.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Purified proteins and peptides and
2 others such as ganglioside, GD2, GD1, GM1, GM2,
3 these antigens either could be purified from a cell
4 source or they could be produced by recombinant DNA
5 technology. These antigens, heat shock proteins,
6 idiotypic, antiotypic antibodies and fusion proteins
7 such as heat shock protein and peptide complex that
8 could be used as such are mixed with the adjuvants
9 before they're injected into the patients. In some
10 situations, these products would also be used to
11 pulse antigen presenting cells such as dendritic
12 cells.

13 Synthetic peptides and gangliosides,
14 they could also be mixed up with the aduvants or KLH
15 and in this case where KLH ganglioside conjuvants
16 could be mixed with the adjuvants such as suponin or
17 with cytokine and injected into patients before --
18 to boost their immune response and synthetic
19 peptides could also be used to pulse different types
20 of antigens presenting cells.

21 Vital and plasmid vectors also qualify
22 as tumor vaccines. Vital vectors may include
23 vaccinia virus, canary pox, fowl pox, adenovirus,
24 adeno associated virus, herpes simplex virus or what
25 have you.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 These vectors or plasmid vectors could
2 be designed to express many different factors,
3 cytokines, growth factors, tumor antigen, viral
4 antigens or some are tumor associated antigens.

5 The issues associated with this kind of
6 tumor vaccine will not be discussed in the current
7 workshop. Issues related to this kind of tumor
8 vaccine have been addressed in the prior FDA and NIH
9 workshop and they are addressed in the available FDA
10 guidance document termed Cell and Gene Therapy.

11 Many of these products and peptides are
12 encapsulated in liposomes or they're mixed with the
13 lipids and thus they form another type of tumor
14 vaccines and they're injected into patients to boost
15 the immune response.

16 For all types of tumor vaccines or any
17 other biological drug, general regulatory principles
18 apply as was emphasized by Dr. Zoon. Cell substrate
19 and cell bank characterization of this product
20 should be thoroughly characterized. Their
21 regulatory guidance document available from the
22 Agency that should be consulted for this particular
23 purpose. This particular issue will also be
24 discussed later on in this session by Dr. Allen

1 Albright of Center for Biologics Evaluation and
2 Research.

3 For a typical biological drug, identity,
4 purity, and potency and safety should be established
5 at the very stages of the product development. And
6 this would continue into Phase 3 studies as I will
7 discuss later on.

8 The potency is defined as measurable,
9 consistent biological response to vaccine in vitro
10 or in vivo in the animal model.

11 For reproducible and consistent product
12 and to maintain lot to lot consistency, the
13 manufacturing process would be controlled and all
14 the glitches should be hammered out before
15 undertaking higher phase of the clinical trial
16 program.

17 In the next two slides, including this
18 one I will summarize the types of studies that
19 should be performed in early and late stages of
20 tumor vaccines product development. At early stage
21 of the product development such as Phase 1 or Phase
22 2, the major issue here is safety. To address this,
23 the products should be characterized thoroughly for
24 the freedom from the adventitious agents that
25 include viruses, sterility includes bacteria and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fungi, mycoplasma and the endotoxin content must be
2 within the allowable range. The allowable ranges
3 less than or equal to five endotoxin units per
4 kilogram per dose.

5 Lot release specification should be set
6 at this particular point. The source of raw
7 material, the components used in the manufacturing
8 process and the process itself should be very well
9 characterized. Although complete identity and
10 potency tests are not required at the Phase 1 stage
11 of the tumor vaccine development, but they should be
12 -- the development should begin after, if needed,
13 after consultation with the Agency.

14 The stability program should typically
15 include integrity, quantitative identity tests for
16 products such as mixture of cells and functional
17 activity which is potency. The integrity of the
18 product could include measurement of viability of
19 cellular products.

20 At later stage and before embarking at
21 the pivotal of Phase 3 studies all assays for the
22 determination of identity and purity and potency
23 should be ascertained and they should be validated.
24 The lot release specification should be tightened

1 and this would continue to be developed during the
2 entire product development.

3 For validation studies, removal of all
4 in-process reagents, examples, cytokines, growth
5 factors, antibodies or enzymes should be completed
6 or on specific occasions should be set if these
7 cannot be removed completely.

8 The stability program should be
9 completed to support the proposed dating period for
10 Phase 3 clinical studies. We also recommend at this
11 stage that you set up a pre-pivotal meeting with the
12 Agency to discuss the product and manufacture and
13 the clinical issues.

14 Next I will discuss about some of the
15 important issues related to various classes of tumor
16 vaccine. For autologous tumor vaccines process of
17 generation of single cell suspension from solid to
18 tumor chunks may define the product and thus, it is
19 very critical. Since tumor cells must be digested
20 with different enzymes for various concentrations of
21 enzymes at different temperatures and different
22 times, thus it is very critical to identify and look
23 at the viability of these cells and set up some sort
24 of specifications.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Since tumor nodules may have some
2 infiltrating components it is therefore very
3 important to characterize the cell types in the cell
4 suspension. The sterility of these products is
5 very, very critical for the safety of the patients.
6 No product should be injected if it is contaminated
7 with any of the advantageous agents that include
8 bacteria, fungi, and mycoplasma if these cells are
9 cultured.

10 If these cells are cultured, the
11 mycoplasma contamination should also be tested as
12 fetal calf serum and other incoming reagents and
13 processes in the cells may introduce mycoplasma
14 contamination.

15 If there is not enough time to determine
16 the mycoplasma contaminator, contaminants that you
17 may explore alternate faster technique such as
18 polyvalent chain reaction or PCR. In conjunction
19 with the standard tests during early phases of the
20 development, in order to collect information on the
21 usefulness of the PCR test, potentially these assays
22 can be validated and if found compatible they can
23 replace conventional tests.

S A G CORP.

1 The purity of the final cell preparation
2 should be defined. Freedom from endotoxin agents
3 and in-process agents should be ascertained.

4 One of the very important tests for this
5 class of product is potency. It is very difficult
6 to assign potency in this situation because all
7 patients' product is a unique product and thus it is
8 a difficult issue. Should presence of certain
9 phenotype of cells in vaccine preparation and
10 generation of in vitro immune response to vaccine
11 must be performed before tumor cells are injected
12 into the patient is a question and that should be
13 addressed.

14 These issues will be discussed in
15 tomorrow's session No. 3 and I hope they will be
16 able to reach some sort of consensus to the
17 questions that we have raised and we have provided
18 to you in your program book.

19 If the cells are shipped, the shipping
20 condition must be validated and confirmed to
21 determine that the shipping conditions have not
22 changed the cellular phenotype of your product.

23 Similar to all biological products, the
24 stability program for autologous tumor vaccine must
25 be established particularly if repeat administration

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of the cells at plan. It is important to know
2 whether you are going to inject same vaccine on
3 second cycle, third cycle, or so on as you inject
4 it.

5 There are some important issues
6 associated with allogenic tumor cells. Unlike
7 autologous tumor cells in this case one has enough
8 time to characterize the product completely. The
9 most important issue with allogenic tumor cell
10 vaccine is the donor screening and saline
11 characterization. These salines may be obtained
12 from ATCC or they may be derived in your facility.
13 They must be fully characterized for freedom from
14 advantageous agents such as viruses, bacteria, fungi
15 and mycoplasma.

16 Quantitative assays should be
17 established to determine product identity, more
18 importantly in situations where more than one saline
19 is mixed and used as tumor vaccines. The potency
20 should be assigned to the product and must be
21 established before embarking on Phase 3 studies.
22 Again, if these vaccines are shipped and handled at
23 different clinical sites, their shipping and
24 handling conditions should be validated to maintain
25 product integrity. These issues will also be

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 discussed in tomorrow's session No. 3 and I hope
2 that you will have various input so that you can
3 help the Agency in deciding some of those tests.

4 Generally, dendritic cells,
5 antigen-presenting cells and dendritic tumor fusion
6 cell vaccines are derived from autologous source and
7 their phenotype may vary depending on the cell
8 source. Furthermore, in vivo mobilization by flit
9 three ligand may enrich a different population of
10 cells. Therefore, phenotypic characterization of
11 these cells and determination of antigen load form
12 an important issue when characterizing identity of
13 this class of tumor vaccines.

14 These issues will be discussed in
15 today's afternoon session and I hope there will be
16 some sort of a consensus on agreeing to the
17 prominent phenotype that should define dendritic
18 cell.

19 The other important issue associated
20 with this class of tumor vaccine is potency assay
21 and that is determined by antigen presentation and
22 biological response which is ability to induce
23 immune response, for response, proliferation of
24 responder cells, generation of CTL response and
25 production of cytokines.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Before embarking on Phase 3 program
2 studies should be finalized to decide whether they
3 are actually activated and are actually presenting
4 antigen. These issues will also be discussed in
5 today's afternoon session and I hope there will be
6 some sort of agreement to agree how to define the
7 potency of activated antigen presenting cells,
8 dendritic cells or like cells.

9 For tumor cell lysates and polyvalent
10 vaccines characterization of cell source is very
11 critical. If allogeneic tumor cells are used, donor
12 screening of the saline and for the safety should be
13 emphasized as it was done for the allogenic cells
14 when they're used as tumor vaccines. Like
15 autologous tumor cells the manufacturing process for
16 the generation of cell lysates and shed soluble
17 tumor antigen is very, very critical.

18 The identity test for this class of
19 product is critical as identity tests for difference
20 cell mixers used at tumor vaccine. It is important
21 to define the quantitative presence of certain known
22 tumor antigens in the lysates or tumor cell mixture
23 or antigen mixture.

24 The characterization of this class of
25 product, tumor cell lysate and polyvalence tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 vaccine should be performed by a number of available
2 techniques. For example, cell number determination,
3 viability from where the cells -- where the product
4 is derived, total protein concentration, SDS-PAGE
5 including Western blot analysis for known protein or
6 peptide, 2D-electrophoretic patterns so there are
7 not too many proteins secreted by the tumor cells
8 and gel filtration patterns.

9 These are only just an example and the
10 test will vary depending on the product. You could
11 apply any of the techniques which you might have to
12 characterize these kind of products. Potency, like
13 with any other product this issue is critical here
14 as well. An assay that can determine consistent
15 biological response to these products in vitro or in
16 vivo in animal model should be desirable.

17 These issues will also be discussed in
18 tomorrow's session and also in a poster session that
19 will be held after the Session 2 today from 5:30 to
20 8 o'clock and will continue until tomorrow. Your
21 participation in this session, your considerations
22 and your thoughts on this issue will be of great
23 value to the Agency.

24 As with recombinant of purified protein
25 some of the required characterizations of this

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 class, purified protein antigens of tumor vaccine
2 include purity, potency, identity and safety by
3 available analytical tools. And some of the
4 available analytical tools are for example identity
5 could be defined by end terminal sequence.

6 The purity could be defined by SDS-PAGE,
7 tryptic digest or HPLC patterns. The potency of
8 this class of products could be defined by
9 generation of CTL response, cytokine secretion of
10 proliferation assays of the pulse cells. This kind
11 of tumor vaccine, the safety by the freedom from
12 infectious agent that includes bacteria and fungi
13 and endotoxin and other process, end process regions
14 should be assigned.

15 Unlike tumor cell lysates synthetic
16 peptides could be easily characterized by available
17 techniques. Some of the most common techniques that
18 are used are spectrophotometric analysis, that
19 includes infrared, MNR and mass spectroscopy. Amino
20 acid analysis and complete sequence analysis can
21 define the identity of this class of product.
22 Purity could be defined by HPLC or high performance
23 capillary electrophoresis. In some situations the
24 complete sequence analysis can determine the
25 purities. Organic solvents such as chloroform and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 acetonitrile are commonly used to synthesize and
2 purify these peptides. The validation of removal of
3 organic solvents for safety is critical for this
4 class of compounds even before embarking on Phase 1
5 studies.

6 If peptides are used as such and when
7 they are mixed with adjuvants the potency of this
8 class of tumor vaccine should be defined on peptides
9 themselves or the peptides that are used to pulse
10 the dendritic cells, the potency should be
11 determined on the pulsed cells.

12 For peptides or plasmids or vital
13 vectors that are encapsulated in liposomes there are
14 important issues associated with them. For example,
15 the composition and the source of the lipids and the
16 pH of the liposome mixture can determine the optimal
17 encapsulation of your product that could be an
18 antigen, that could be DNA or it could be a peptide.

19 The particle size and the viscosity and
20 the residual solvents should be determined for the
21 safety. Like all products, the stability of
22 liposomes at storage temperature should be
23 determined for later phases of the product
24 development.

1 I have listed here some of the telephone
2 numbers, fax numbers, e-mail addresses and the
3 internet site from where you can obtain various
4 regulatory guidance documents that are available to
5 you for product development. These addresses and
6 the list of relevant documents are provided to you
7 in your program book. Of course, you are invited to
8 call us any time you have any questions regarding
9 tumor vaccine product development. We'll be happy
10 to attempt to address your questions that you might
11 have.

12 I would like to acknowledge some of my
13 colleagues from NCI and the FDA who have helped me,
14 particularly Dr. Jay Greenblatt. We have a
15 wonderful collaboration in setting up this workshop.
16 Dr. Earl Dye and Dr. Joyce Frey-Vasconcells from
17 Center for Biologic Evaluation and Research who have
18 given me a lot of input in preparation of this talk
19 and of course, members of Tumor Vaccine Workshop
20 Organizing Committee for their valuable contribution
21 in organizing this workshop.

22 Finally, I'd like to thank you for your
23 participation and your kind attention. Thank you
24 very much.

25 (Applause.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. KEEGAN: Okay, in organizing this
2 meeting one of the things that we had discussed is
3 the Office of Vaccines has many, many years of
4 experience with vaccines in relation to infectious
5 disease. So the next two presenters are going to
6 provide us lessons that they've learned with respect
7 to infectious disease and hopefully this will
8 provide you some insight and some guidance into
9 issues that you can think about in relation to tumor
10 vaccines.

11 So the first presenter is Dr. Donna
12 Chandler and she's going to talk about lessons from
13 preventive infectious disease vaccines in relation
14 to bacterial vaccines and adjuvants.

15 DR. CHANDLER: Can you hear me? Is this
16 going to be okay? There we go. Thank you, David,
17 for your help.

18 I'm Donna Chandler. I'm in the Division
19 of Vaccines and Related Products Applications in the
20 Office of Vaccines Research and Review and I did
21 include a phone number and you're welcome to call if
22 you have specific questions about bacterial and
23 viral vaccines.

24 This is an outline of what I'd like to
25 try to go over with you this morning. I'd like to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 give some examples of preventive bacterial vaccines,
2 talk a little bit about preclinical studies and
3 vaccine adjuvant issue, go over some of the clinical
4 data that we expect to see for vaccines and then
5 finally help with -- give a list of some of the
6 common pitfalls that we've seen. I'm talking from
7 the experience with bacterial vaccines and most of
8 what I'm going to say, in general, applies to viral
9 vaccines as well and then Dr. Albright will focus on
10 viral vaccines and cell substrate issues.

11 This is a list of the preventive vaccine
12 examples. We have things such as toxoids, such as
13 diphtheria, tetanus and pertussis toxoids,
14 inactivated bacterial vaccines such as whole cell
15 pertussis, purified antigens such as pertussis
16 fimbria hemagglutinin, the 69K protein or protastin,
17 typhoid polysaccharide the VI polysaccharide is a
18 purified antigen and then the pneumococcal
19 polysaccharide antigens in the 23 valent
20 pneumococcal vaccines.

21 We also have examples of live attenuated
22 bacteria such as the salmonella typhi Ty21a. This
23 is actually the only oral bacterial vaccine that we
24 have currently approved.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 There are recombinant proteins such as
2 the lyme recombinant outer surface protein A. We
3 also have conjugate vaccines. A success story with
4 the hemophilus type b PRP-CPM, polysaccharide
5 conjugated to protein. We have a number of these
6 types of conjugate vaccines approved and then I
7 would also like to mention combinations that it is
8 feasible to combine a number of vaccines such as the
9 DTP whole cell pertussis, hemophilus conjugate which
10 is tetramune and hepatitis B hemophilus convax.

11 Now let's see, okay, in terms of
12 therapeutic vaccines currently we don't have any
13 therapeutic vaccines approved for an infectious
14 disease indication. BCG Live is approved for
15 bladder cancer but that probably works by a
16 nonspecific stimulation of immune mechanisms.

17 This is kind of an overview slide of
18 what we would expect to see in terms of a preventive
19 vaccine development. We would like to see, of
20 course, clinical data on safety as well as efficacy
21 data. We would expect to see information on
22 manufacturing consistency. There are specific Code
23 of Federal Regulations requirements such as potency,
24 sterility, purity, identity and we're still mandated

S A G CORP.

1 to use the General Safety Test for vaccines unless a
2 specific exemption is requested.

3 Stability is important to establish an
4 expiration date. The package insert or labeling has
5 to be developed and the safety and efficacy data
6 would be presented at the Biological Products --
7 Vaccines and Related Biological Products Advisory
8 Committee and of course, a pre-licensing inspection
9 of the facility would be required.

10 I'd like to move a little bit now to --
11 whoops, I think we skipped one. Here we go. Okay,
12 fine, thanks.

13 I'd like to talk about the vaccine
14 preclinical studies. I don't want to go over the
15 same sorts of things that Dr. Essayan presented, but
16 they differ a bit from classical drugs or even
17 therapeutics in the Office of Vaccine. For one
18 thing, most vaccines have limited toxicity and
19 they're given in limited doses, generally, maybe one
20 to five doses over months or years. But in terms of
21 preclinical data that we would expect to see, we
22 would like to have some information on potency and
23 immunogenicity. Immunogenicity is a very important
24 aspect of vaccines and we rely on it a great deal.
25 Pyrogenicity, the rabbit pyrogen test or LAL test

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 for endotoxin, in some cases the CRF actually
2 exempts bacterial vaccines from pyrogenicity, but we
3 usually see that as a test.

4 Challenge and protection studies in an
5 animal model. If an appropriate animal model exists
6 is important and useful data for us. For live
7 organisms which have been attenuated, the
8 documentation of the level of attenuation is
9 important. For bacterial toxins which have been
10 inactivated, we would want to have information,
11 expect to see information to show that that
12 inactivation is complete or to document the extent
13 of inactivation and also to show that reversion does
14 not occur on storage.

15 Private characterization issues would
16 include the necessary aspects such as, for example,
17 a polysaccharide conjugate vaccine. We would want
18 to see information on the ratio of the
19 polysaccharide to the protein carrier and perhaps
20 any information on the percent free polysaccharide.

21 It's becoming more relevant that we
22 would expect to see good laboratory practices safety
23 study to support a Phase 1 clinical trial. And
24 while this is still developing or this policy is
25 still evolving, I think you would expect to see more

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 requests for ReproTox studies for vaccines that were
2 intended to be used in adults.

3 I'd like to go over quickly some of the
4 adjuvant issues and in this case I'm using adjuvant
5 as defined as an agent that augments specific immune
6 responses to antigens. Currently only aluminum
7 compounds, alum, aluminum phosphate and aluminum
8 hydroxide are the only compounds, the only adjuvants
9 approved in currently licensed vaccines. These
10 specific antigen adjuvant formulation is licensed
11 and adjuvants alone have not been approved for
12 generic use with vaccines.

13 There are a couple of references I'd
14 like to refer you to for preclinical studies for
15 vaccines with adjuvants in AIDS Research in Human
16 Retroviruses and there's also a list of about 80
17 products in a compendium of vaccine adjuvants in
18 excipients in the book Vaccine Designs, Subunit and
19 Adjuvant Approach. And this was compiled by Fred
20 Vogel and Mike Powell.

21 This contains a list of structures, uses, chemical
22 and physical properties and safety and toxicity in
23 the adjuvants.

24 Okay, I'd like to kind of go through
25 quickly some of the principles for toxicologic

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 studies of adjuvant and vaccines. Basically, our
2 experience was aluminum compound supports the
3 safety. In other words, we wouldn't require
4 additional studies on the aluminum adjuvant alone.
5 However, if an adjuvant, a novel adjuvant is being
6 used, we would expect a single repeat dose toxicity
7 study and as we get, see more adjuvants and we are
8 moving toward the realms of studies that need to be,
9 that have been done and are required for the more
10 classic drugs.

11 The principle again, as you've heard and
12 will probably hear again, the preclinical study that
13 you choose, the preclinical information should
14 support the proposed clinical trial.

15 The exact antigen adjuvant combination
16 that you would propose to use in the clinic should
17 be evaluated in your preclinical study because we
18 have seen instances where the antigen may contribute
19 to the adverse reactions or the reactogenicity of
20 the combination. The absolute cumulative dose in
21 animals should be greater than the intended
22 cumulative human dose. The annual study should
23 include or use the route of administration intended
24 for human use and should be given in episodic doses
25 over several months rather than every day for two

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 weeks which might be more of the classical drug
2 approach, so that the use in animals reflects how it
3 will be used in humans.

4 The dose per injection should be equal
5 to or exceed the human dose and the guidance that
6 we've been giving sponsors is that if you've got
7 your vaccine formulated in half a ml or one ml that
8 you can give that to rabbits. Then you've got, on a
9 per kilogram basis, you've got a considerable margin
10 of safety.

11 And then there are controls to be
12 considered. The adjuvant alone should be included,
13 again as a control for the potential that the
14 combination may be reactogenic and the antigen alone
15 should be included or formulated with an aluminum
16 compound to show that the adjuvant actually makes a
17 contribution to the immune response.

18 Next one. I'd like to turn to the next
19 couple of slides dealing with the vaccine clinical
20 data. The safety, of course, is an essential aspect
21 and we need to identify the potential specific
22 adverse events that would be observed. Would be
23 local and systemic reactions, as well as immediate
24 and late and long term reactions and basically you

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 would be gathering the rates and incidents for the
2 package insert.

3 For most vaccines, we're looking at
4 being able to detect an event rate about 1 in 100.
5 There should be an adequate safety data base. For
6 example, for the newly approved acellular pertussis
7 vaccines which are given to infants at two, four and
8 six months, we have about 5,000 total subjects in
9 each of those -- for each of those products. Of
10 course, you have to keep in mind the risk benefit
11 assessment that preventive vaccines are primarily
12 for healthy individuals.

13 Efficacy is generally expected for all
14 novel vaccines. It's important to define and come
15 up with the prospective primary endpoint which will
16 determine your sample size. Most vaccines, I would
17 say, we're looking a target efficacy of about 70
18 percent in the per protocol cohort.

19 Immunogenicity and bioimmunogenicity for
20 vaccines, most of the time we're talking about
21 serologic antibody responses, is used -- we rely on
22 immunogenicity quite a bit for determining
23 manufacturing consistency. Most preventive vaccines
24 include a clinical lot consistency study for
25 approval.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 The immunogenicity is used for bridging,
2 for bridging from different populations, for
3 bridging different regimens, dose and schedule, for
4 bridging lots and also for bridging manufacturing
5 changes.

6 Immunogenicity can be used potentially
7 for the surrogate for efficacy if correlates of
8 protection have been established. And the types of
9 immunogenicity data we're looking at in terms of how
10 a product would be approved, currently we're looking
11 at percent responders or response rates, geometric
12 mean titers or geometric mean concentrations of
13 antibody and the reverse cumulative distribution
14 curves which are very helpful. Those plot the
15 percent of subjects that respond with increasing
16 titers or concentrations.

17 But in addition to the clinical data
18 that needs to be developed during the IND phase,
19 there are also some nonclinical issues that
20 definitely have to be considered. Again,
21 consistency of manufacturer is very important for
22 vaccines. The process is very important and we
23 consider in some cases that the process defines the
24 product. Quality control testing for product
25 release has to be developed and a potency -- potency

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 is a difficult concept -- it's difficult to define.
2 It's not necessarily obvious what's going to be an
3 appropriate potency assay and it takes considerable
4 thought and consideration, but basically, you need
5 an appropriate potency assay to be able to dispense
6 a safe and effective dose.

7 Stability would use the -- also would
8 oftentimes incorporate potency, would include real
9 time data to support an expiration date. Also keep
10 in mind during the IND phase, again having
11 appropriate immune assays and to be able to
12 appropriately diagnose the disease that you are
13 hoping to prevent.

14 And now I'd just like to spend the last
15 few slides just going over some of the common
16 pitfalls that we've seen in vaccine IND submissions.
17 These could be the basis for clinical hold if
18 they're serious enough because you have to remember
19 the population for most vaccines is normal, healthy
20 subjects.

21 In terms of preclinical data, sometimes
22 we seen immunogenicity data is lacking and even if
23 it's there the experimental data details are
24 incomplete. Basically, we need information on the

1 lot, the dose, the route and the assays that are
2 being used to evaluate the immune response.

3 Again, the preclinical studies are
4 intended to support the safety and the dose proposed
5 for use in the clinical study.

6 Next. Manufacturing information and
7 variable conditions are frequent problems. I've
8 seen folks say well, we centrifuge from 2 to 24
9 hours, but what's important is to include the exact
10 information and the exact procedure that has been
11 used to prepare the lot that you intend to use in
12 your clinical trial. Again, lot, important lot
13 release or in-process test results may be lacking
14 and again this should be lot specific.

15 Potentially toxic substances, for
16 example, organic solvents, validation of removal or
17 assays for residual components should be included
18 and adventitious agents, inadequate testing or
19 inadequate information on source materials can be a
20 problem for IND submissions.

21 Next one. Lot information is, of
22 course, required. Sometimes we see in the protocol
23 the lot that the sponsor plans to use has not been
24 clearly identified and our recommendation is that
25 you number your lots very early in development so

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that you can follow each, follow changes in
2 manufacturing and testing and relate that
3 information to -- back one. I'm sorry -- to be able
4 the relate the information obtained with various
5 lots. It's important to identify the lots and
6 number them early.

7 A summary table for lot information
8 should be provided which would include the test
9 that's being performed, the stage of manufacturer,
10 what the acceptance criteria are and the test result
11 and then the appropriate data can be attached.

12 And then there are protocol issues. We
13 recommend that subjects submit the subject diary
14 and/or the case report form to demonstrate how
15 adverse events are going to be monitored. Assays
16 describing how the immune response is going to be
17 evaluated should be included. Again, the endpoints
18 are critical as well as the case definition for
19 efficacy studies and include the statistical
20 analyses, including any planned interim analysis.
21 And oftentimes we see inconsistencies in the
22 submission. It's important to be consistent, that
23 the protocol, the investigator's brochure and the
24 consent form essentially detail the same study.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 That concludes my slides. Just to
2 quickly summarize again, preclinical studies should
3 be appropriate to justify the clinical study, i.e.,
4 that the sponsor has concluded that it is reasonably
5 safe to conduct the proposed clinical investigation,
6 and the IND process is a mechanism to collect data
7 to support the eventual license application. You
8 need to have clinical safety and efficacy data and
9 remember to keep in mind the product development so
10 that you can prepare, come up with a consistent
11 product at a safe and effective dose.

12 Thank you.

13 (Applause.)

14 DR. KEEGAN: Okay, our final speaker
15 this session is Dr. Allen Albright. He's going to
16 be talking about lessons from preventive infectious
17 disease vaccines in relation to viral vaccines and
18 adjuvants.

19 DR. ALBRIGHT: I might step around here
20 so I can see my own slides. I'm here to talk about
21 lessons that we've learned from preventive vaccines
22 for infectious diseases, mainly viral vaccines and I
23 feel like a fish -- I'm sorry, you can't hear me.

24 I'm Allen Albright. I work in the
25 Division of Vaccines and Related Product

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Applications Branch which is part of the Office of
2 Vaccines at CBER. Again, these are preventive
3 vaccines that I'm going to be talking about, but
4 there is some overlap in terms of the way viral
5 vaccines are produced, so hopefully this information
6 will be helpful and relevant to you.

7 To give you an idea of where I want to
8 go with the talk, first of all an overview. I want
9 to touch on first of all the regulatory authority
10 that we have for viral vaccines, give some examples
11 of viral vaccines. We'll spend a great deal of
12 time, not too much time, on safe viral vaccine
13 production, mainly covering issues of cell
14 substrate, viral seeds as well as product testing.
15 I will touch a little bit on potency as well as
16 consistency of manufacture. Again, these points
17 have been discussed, but I will underscore those
18 points and then talk a little bit about what we see
19 in terms of IND pitfalls for viral vaccines.

20 In terms of the regulation of viral
21 vaccines, again as biological products, these come
22 from the Code of Federal Regulations, or the CFR,
23 mainly 21 CFR 312 and 610 and these are to insure
24 product safety. CBER also has Points to Consider
25 documents and other guidance documents which are

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 very handy and that we use also to help regulate
2 these products.

3 Other documents that we refer to and
4 also use as guidelines would be the ICH guidelines
5 as well as the WHO, World Health Organization
6 standards or requirements.

7 I thought I'd put a slide or two in here
8 about regulatory philosophy at CBER and again
9 primarily is to evaluate and identify safety
10 concerns as they relate to product manufacture and
11 clinical design which Dr. Keegan highlighted
12 earlier. We're also very concerned about quality
13 control of your production process. Again, good
14 quality control usually means a safe product and a
15 consistent product, so that's important.

16 Other safety evaluation considerations
17 and I put this up here mainly because I'm in the
18 Office of Vaccines and I know most of the people
19 here are concerned with Office of Therapeutics, but
20 again there are differences in terms of safety
21 evaluations, of course, for intended use, either
22 prophylaxis versus therapy, again different risk
23 benefit concerns; different target populations, are
24 you going into healthy infants versus sick patients;
25 routes of administration, cumulative number of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 doses; severity of disease and whether the medical
2 need is unmet, again, just evaluation for safety
3 considerations.

4 Safety considerations as it pertains to
5 product, again, there can be different levels of
6 product purification or viral clearance. When we're
7 talking about a live viral vaccine, again, we're
8 basically talking about a filtered culture
9 supernatant versus a recombinant subunit vaccine
10 which could be highly purified and you have
11 significant purification procedures, so there are
12 differences in the level of purity.

13 The extent of inactivation, again, with
14 a live vaccine there's no inactivation there.
15 Inactivated, of course, would be inactivated and
16 again would probably reduce the level of risk.

17 What examples do we have of viral
18 vaccines which are licensed and again, these are
19 categories of viral vaccines here on the left.
20 They're live attenuated, such as the MMR, measles,
21 mumps, rubella; the live oral polio and the newly
22 licensed rotovirus vaccine. There are inactivated
23 viral vaccines such hepatitis A, influenza,
24 inactivated polio and rabies.

S A G CORP.

1 There are purified protein subunits
2 which are made out of recombinant cell substrates or
3 yeast such as the hepatitis B vaccine or peptides.
4 Two other viral vaccine types are the viral vector
5 recombinant, again, and the DNA vaccines. Again,
6 both of these vaccine types of investigational at
7 these stages.

8 I'll spend the majority of my time
9 talking about the traditional viral vaccine
10 manufacturing approach, but again, because viruses
11 are produced in cell lines, some of these issues are
12 cross cutting.

13 Okay, in terms of safe, viral vaccine
14 production, we use a complementary approach and what
15 I mean by that is there is characterization of a
16 cell substrate for identity, endogenous and
17 adventitious agents. We have certification of cell
18 culture media, viral C history and characterization,
19 your validation of manufacturing process for removal
20 and activation of viruses, release testing of bulk
21 and final products.

22 Also, there's in-process testing for adventitious
23 agents to see whether those are introduced.

24 In terms of cell substrates, again, each
25 manufacturer must characterize a cell substrate,

S A G CORP.

1 banked and used in production. In terms of history
2 and isolation of the bank, growth characterizations,
3 karyology and tumor genicity, freedom from
4 adventitious agents. And these pertain to master,
5 working and end of production cells.

6 In terms of identity testing, we have
7 morphologies, species of origin, cell passage
8 number, copy number and physical state of expression
9 construct and again, these would pertain to
10 recombinant proteins made from cell substrates.
11 We'd ask that you would characterize your expression
12 system, in other words, give a handle on genetic
13 stability and integrity if that's applicable.

14 Okay, the rest, there's sort of a list
15 of adventitious agent tests that we use. Again,
16 some of these have been mentioned and I've listed
17 the CFR references there on the right, issues such
18 as bacterial and fungal sterility, mycoplasma,
19 spiroplasma in the case of insect cell substrate,
20 mycoplasma testing for cultable and noncultable
21 mycoplasma, mycobacteria testing these both in
22 animals and in culture, looking for adventitious
23 viruses both in vitro and in vivo techniques, again,
24 looking for acute lytic viruses as well as latent

S A G CORP.

1 viruses such as retroviruses or other oncogenic
2 viruses.

3 Okay, in terms of adventitious virus
4 tests in vitro and again, a lot of these are spelled
5 out in the guidance documents, I'll highlight at the
6 end. These tests are performed on monolayers of at
7 least three different cell types including same
8 species, tissues of substrate, human diploid cells,
9 monkey kidney cells. There are tests for
10 hemoabsorbate, hemoabsorbing and hemagglutinating
11 viruses and again, as mentioned earlier, testing of
12 your raw materials such as fetal bovine serum and
13 Trypsin for bovine and porcine paraviruses as
14 outlined in 9 CFR. And with the fetal bovine serum
15 again, we ask that you use sources that are
16 confirmed BSC free or certified sources for bovine
17 spongiform, encephalopathy agent.

18 There are in vivo tests for adventitious
19 viruses in your cell substrates including adult
20 encephaline mice, embryonated hen's eggs and when
21 appropriate in vivo assays including guinea pigs,
22 rabbits and/or monkeys.

23 Okay, if you're using a rodent cell
24 substrate such as mouse, rat or hamster, you can do
25 the MAP, RAP, HAP tests respectfully and looking for

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antibody production when you inject these cells into
2 these animals and you look for species specific
3 viruses which may be present in your rodent cell
4 substrate.

5 In addition, you're going to look for
6 lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus or LCM. If
7 you're using a human cell substrate and we may ask
8 for tests for viruses such as Epstein-Barr virus,
9 CMV, hepatitis B and C, maybe there are others. You
10 can use in vitro techniques, sometimes to look for
11 these such as PCR. We're also concerned about the
12 tissue source and the donor medical history for
13 these types of substrates. So those issues are very
14 important.

15 Okay, other adventitious virus tests,
16 retroviruses is an important category and usually
17 retroviruses tests are done by transmission,
18 electron microscopy or TEM. Reverse transcriptase
19 assays are used, as well as infectivity assays. And
20 if appropriate, depending again on your cell line,
21 we may ask for papilloma virus tests, adenoviruses,
22 HHV 6 and others which become known to us.

23 Okay, once your cell substrate is
24 characterized again another level of safety again
25 would be your viral seed testing. And again, this

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 would apply for live viral vaccines as well as
2 inactivated vaccines, where you use viral seeds.
3 And I've summarized here some of the testing that
4 will be required for typical master and working
5 viral seeds for adventitious agents. You do control
6 cells where you look for observation, hemadsorption
7 and identity. You do supernatant of control cells
8 looking at inoculation on cell cultures, microplasma
9 and sterility. Once you've titered your virus or
10 your viral stock, you do a viral suspension test
11 where you look at sterility, microplasma, cell
12 culture testing, embryonated egg inoculation, animal
13 inoculation, RT testing, titer and tuberculosis and
14 identity. Again, a lot of tests, but you want to
15 make sure that these viral seeds are safe as well as
16 the cell substrate.

17 Okay, once the seeds in the cell
18 substrates are characterized and qualified, we may
19 look at your cell substrate for validation of viral
20 elimination from your manufacturing and purification
21 process. Again, the tests that I've described
22 previously can detect adventitious agents, but your
23 manufacturing process may serve and should serve to
24 remove these types of agents as well. Again, this

S A G CORP.

1 would apply for inactivated viral vaccines and/or
2 cell line-produced recombinant proteins.

3 This would involve -- I'll highlight
4 these four here: selection of appropriate viruses
5 in these types of tests, physical removal versus
6 inactivation, kinetics and completeness of
7 inactivation and an estimation of combined effect.
8 I won't mention these two, but these are outlined in
9 the Points to Consider document. Each step needs to
10 be analyzed for its ability to eliminate virus as
11 well as you can do a scaled down manufacturing
12 system approach to look at that.

13 Okay, viruses used in viral clearance
14 studies typically shall resemble viruses that could
15 contaminate the product, should represent a wide
16 range of physical chemical properties and include
17 relevant viruses or specific model viruses and
18 nonspecific model viruses.

19 What are model viruses? Again, these
20 would be typically model viruses of DNA or RNA
21 genomes, enveloped and nonenveloped, low to high
22 physical chemical resistances, small to large and
23 viruses that can be grown to high titer. In other
24 words, viruses at different ends of the spectrum,
25 but again, if you can eliminate the small and the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 large, typically anything in between should be also
2 removed, so that's the idea with that.

3 And distinguish between physical removal
4 of these adventitious agent or viruses versus
5 inactivation of the viruses in your manufacturing
6 process. Both serve as a mechanism for viral
7 reduction, but again, mechanism of a loss of viral
8 infectivity should be determined at each step.

9 Okay, just a point here on effectiveness
10 of inactivation. If you're inactivating your virus
11 in cell culture, you need to validate the kinetics
12 of the inactivation and that's where you test
13 residual infectivity of samples during inactivation
14 the process at different time points. The
15 purposes of this is to establish an inactivation
16 curve and we hope to see a linear decline in
17 infectivity at time of inactivation.

18 Included in that, but separate, is also
19 a test for completeness of inactivation, where once
20 you've generated your material or your product, you
21 want to test multiple dose equivalents such as two
22 time points and typically this can come at the
23 middle and the end of the inactivation period and
24 what you're looking for here is that there would be
25 no CPE or cytopathic effect or immunofluorescence

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antibody results in cell culture indicative again of
2 live virus.

3 Very quickly here after your viral
4 inactivation is finished you want to do an
5 estimation of combined effects of the inactivation
6 and the clearance from your manufacturing process.
7 And there's a need to quantitatively estimate the
8 overall level of virus reduction achieved. It's
9 important to demonstrate that in your process
10 there's an excess capacity for viral clearance
11 within your system. It's important to compare the
12 amount of virus eliminated to the amount of virus
13 present in the unprocessed bulk drug and that's
14 usually done by TEM or transmissional electron
15 microscopy.

16 Lastly here, it's important to calculate
17 the virus reduction and estimate the virus particles
18 per dose of your vaccine. That's outlined in the
19 ICH guidance document referenced here. So how
20 much did your process really eliminate virus
21 compared to what you inactivated versus what's in
22 your final dose.

23 Okay, so you characterize your cell
24 substrates. You characterize your viral seeds.
25 You've looked at your manufacturing process for its

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 ability to remove these agents. You want to do
2 final or product testing as well as to finish your
3 complementary approach. Again, purity tests and
4 I've listed here a number of things that we look
5 for, residual cellular protein, DNA, RNA, serum
6 protein. You can use BSA as a marker. Endotoxin,
7 moisture, ancillary products from your manufacturing
8 process such as protease inhibitors, antibiotics.
9 Again, the cellular protein, I'll just highlight,
10 sometimes this is important in terms of what types
11 of cell substrates you're using, in terms of what
12 kind of cellular protein might be hanging around.

13 Sterility, of course, is done; general
14 safety tests, except for those products which are
15 exempt, specified products such as therapeutic DNA
16 vaccines are exempt, are in that category.

17 There's also product release testing of
18 bulk and final products. Again, we also like to
19 look at any in-process testing that you may do to
20 prove that there were no adventitious agents
21 introduced during the manufacturing process.

22 Potency. I'll highlight that in a
23 minute is done and then there may be other
24 characterization tests that are not part of your lot
25 release, but again such as mass spec, N and C-

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 terminal analyses and isoelectric point. Again, the
2 more characterized your product is, hopefully the
3 more safe it is. So these tests are important as
4 well.

5 To touch on product potency again this
6 has been highlighted before, but again potency is
7 basically the specific ability or capacity of the
8 product to affect a given result and ideally this
9 should correlate with clinical activity in an ideal
10 world, but we like to see quantitative in vitro
11 and/or in vivo tests for potency in our office. And
12 I would distinguish between biological activity
13 versus expression for potency assays. And what do I
14 mean by that? Well, animal assays typically, I know
15 there's a lot of variability associated with animal
16 assays. They give you a level of measure of
17 biologic activity. For a vaccine, this would be an
18 immune response, an antibody response. And
19 typically we see assays in mice or guinea pigs.
20 There are other assays such as ELISAs which people
21 can use for potency, but these usually measure
22 antigenic content, not necessarily biological
23 function. However, and sometimes we like to see
24 both, if sponsors can correlate an in vitro assay to
25 an in vivo activity, we may accept an ELISA or an in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 vitro assay, but that has to be correlated and
2 validated before we'll accept that.

3 Potency lastly is important because it's
4 usually associated with product stability which is
5 important.

6 One slide here on consistency of product
7 manufacturer. Again, we like to see that there's
8 quality control of the production process to insure
9 safe, consistent, stable product. Is there lot to
10 lot consistency, etcetera.

11 One point here, specifically, I know
12 we've been telling sponsors for live viral
13 recombinant vaccines when you do a consistency of
14 manufacturer proof of concept, I guess, a lot of
15 times we just see Western blot data that's given and
16 Western blot alone doesn't really give you a
17 quantitative estimate of the proportion of virions
18 expressing the recombinant product, although it's an
19 assay that shows that product is being produced.
20 We've been recommending that immunoplaque analyses
21 of the viral stock be performed to show the
22 proportion of production lots which are expressing
23 your protein.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Again, this would demonstrate consistent
2 expression of the protein as well as demonstrate
3 that the gene is retained as a stable insert.

4 Preclinical, I will not spend any time
5 really on this other than to say this is important
6 for viral vaccines as well. It's important to show
7 that data, in vivo data and in vitro data support
8 the product's clinical use, namely, for toxicity
9 activity and a possible efficacy. Again, as Drs.
10 Chandler and Essayan mentioned, adjuvants, novel
11 adjuvants like cytokines and other immunosimulatory
12 molecules, we license adjuvants with the product,
13 not as a separate entity, but for novel adjuvants
14 such as these we usually require separate
15 preclinical studies to be done.

16 Real quickly, IND pitfalls for viral
17 vaccines again would fall under the same categories
18 as Dr. Chandler just outlined, but in terms of all
19 the testing that has to be done for viral vaccines,
20 obviously, if there's insufficient information to
21 assess the safety of the product such as removal or
22 inactivation of these adventitious agents, that's
23 going to be a problem for your IND submission or
24 it's going to be a reason that raises question in
25 our minds of safety. And usually the testing and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 sometimes sponsors have done testing, they just
2 don't provide the documentation to us or they
3 haven't done it at all. So they can fall into
4 different categories, but again, these would include
5 tests on your master and working cell banks, master
6 and working viral seeds and your bulk and final
7 product tests.

8 Other issues of manufacturing, again,
9 variable conditions described, how did you produce
10 your viral vaccine? It's important to describe your
11 procedure. In-process testing may be lacking,
12 again, there may be failure to validate removal of
13 potentially toxic substances from your manufacturing
14 process.

15 So in summary, sponsors should make
16 every effort to produce and I probably should have
17 put these in quotation marks, should make every
18 effort to produce quality products which are as safe
19 as possible. Quality, per se, cannot be tested into
20 the product, however, appropriate testing of cell
21 substrates, viral seeds, bulk and final products, as
22 well as in-process testing can help insure the
23 safety of these vaccines.

24 Thank you.

25 (Applause.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. KEEGAN: Okay, since we're running a
2 little bit short of time, I think what we're going
3 to do instead of having a question and answer period
4 is let you go to lunch and we will start promptly at
5 1 o'clock because we have to be out of this
6 auditorium at the designated time here, so we need
7 to get going. If you have questions on regulatory
8 principles that were presented, feel free to catch
9 any of us and ask us questions.

10 DR. PURI: The cafeterias, as I
11 indicated, there are two of them in this building,
12 one in the first B-1 level and the other one is on
13 the second floor. There are other cafeterias that
14 are available, please pick up the map from the
15 Registration Desk. So we'll see you at 1 o'clock.

16 (Whereupon, at 12:14 p.m., the workshop
17 was recessed, to reconvene at 1:00 p.m., Thursday,
18 December 10, 1998.

19
20
21
22
23
24
25

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

S A G CORP.

A F T E R N O O N S E S S I O N

(1:01 P.M.)

DR. STEINMAN: We have a busy afternoon and it's time to hear of a number of different presentations on the clinical use of dendritic cells. The plan is most of the speakers really don't have a lot of time, so there probably won't be much time for discussion in association with each talk, but we do have a panel discussion at the end and we'll try to have all the questions and discussions come up then.

Okay, so it's 1 o'clock and our first speaker is Gerald Marti and it's on the current clinical use of dendritic cells, points to consider.

DR. MARTI: If I could have the first slide, please? I thought I would begin my discussion this afternoon with a partial list of the so-called cellular or somatic and genetic therapies that I have seen come across my desk or this division in the past ten years. Basically, this started with the LAK and TIL cells and then moved into transduced cells and a lot of subfractionation enrichment procedures for cells which brings us today to dendritic cells.

S A G C O R P .

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I would say that during most of that
2 time I wanted to point out that flow cytometry was a
3 very useful tool and remains a very useful tool in
4 studying those. In the last two years, there have
5 been 40 submissions to the Agency that involved the
6 title "dendritic cells." Two of those involved HIV,
7 three were hematological malignancies consisting of
8 multi-myeloma, amyloidosis and chronic myelogenous
9 leukemia. There were 14 involving primarily
10 metastatic melanoma and then the remaining bulk
11 involves solid tumors.

12 The cell preparations were varied. Some
13 used whole blood, some used unmobilized apheresis
14 products. Some used mobilized apheresis. Those who
15 mobilized used either G-CSF, GM-CSF or flt3L.
16 Almost all of these with the exception of those
17 individuals are investigators who used whole blood,
18 used an enrichment procedure and most often the
19 enrichment procedure was buoyant density
20 centrifugation.

21 The cell culture and I'm -- since the
22 majority of these types of planned therapies were in
23 the autologous setting, the goal was to obtain
24 autologous peripheral blood mononuclear cells to
25 derive the dendritic cells and in the vast majority

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 GM-CSF and IL-4 was used to derive or expand the
2 dendritic cells.

3 In some situations, interferon gamma was
4 used and in select situations, the autologous PBM
5 cells were either purified to the level of CD8 cells
6 or various procedures to enrich CD34 cells and then
7 the typical cytokines of GM-CSF and IL4.

8 In some situations, activation was
9 accomplished by using OKT3. That can be soluble or
10 on beads and tumor necrosis factor alpha and flt3L
11 was also used.

12 The antigen preparations, in all
13 honesty, I attempted to summarize the antigen
14 preparations, but if I started in the upper lefthand
15 of the corner and wrote down to the right hand I
16 would not have -- I would not be able to tell you.
17 There is such diversity in antigens that are used
18 that I think it is crying out for some kind of
19 consistency. Dr. Raj Puri had a very long list of
20 the various and sundry antigen preparations that
21 have been used. This is representative.

22 In addition, the antigens that are being
23 used in these cultures, some individuals use the
24 adjuvant, the incomplete froins adjuvant. some
25 individuals are using KLH and some are using tetanus

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 toxoid and some are using KLH and tetanus toxoid
2 together.

3 The culturing and antigen pulse is also
4 somewhat variable. Sometimes the culture and the
5 pulsing is overnight. Sometimes it's 30 to 48
6 hours. Sometimes it's 6 to 7 days with the last 24
7 hours or overnight being the antigen pulse.
8 Usually, it is followed by some minimal wash and
9 it's used immediately, although some investigators
10 are using cryopreservation for either delayed juice
11 or serial injections. One thing that is not always
12 so clear is exactly what the cell dose is or the
13 target dose is. And the roots of
14 administration, although they tend to be primarily
15 IV, some investigators use subcut., some combined IV
16 and subcut. and I left the KLH and tetanus toxoid on
17 there because I wasn't sure as to what level they
18 remained in the product that was being infused.

19 Also in this modern era of the
20 cytokines, they are now being used as adjuvants and
21 some of the adjuvants that are being used are being
22 administered at the same time as the cellular
23 vaccine is IL-2,
24 G-CSF, GM-CSF and interferon.

S A G CORP.

1 Okay, cell product characterization,
2 morphology. I appreciated seeing Dr. Steinman's
3 morphological presentation this morning. I'm not
4 suggesting that morphology become some kind of gold
5 standard, but I do think it would be useful for
6 investigators to make a slide once in a while and
7 look at it, if for no other reason to do a gram
8 stain.

9 (Laughter.)

10 I also have a prejudice that most
11 immunologists have never seen a lymphocyte --

12 (Laughter.)

13 -- let alone a dendritic cell. The
14 whole area of tumor specific assays, be they
15 proliferation cytotoxicity or cytokine release assay
16 is going to be the subject of the next session or
17 the third session tomorrow. In the remaining time
18 that I have, I want to share with you our experience
19 in flow cytometry although it does not relate
20 directly to dendritic cells, we believe that it's
21 applicable.

22 The common immunophenotype, Dr. Steinman
23 outlined very nicely the problems this morning. You
24 have the origin of the dendritic cell. Is it a
25 Langerhans cell? Is it myloid? It is monocytic?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 It is a dendritic cell? I recently learned that
2 lymph nodes now are believed to have two types of
3 dendritic cells. And is it an immature form or is
4 it a mature form. This is a rather early phenotype
5 suggested by Peters, et al., CD-1, CD-14 and CD-33,
6 more or less marking the myelomonocytic with the co-
7 stimulatory molecules, CD-40, CD-64 and some
8 adhesion molecules.

9 And of course, the classic bright
10 expression of Class 2 antigens here listed as HLA-
11 DR, DP and DQ.

12 In a more recent article, Banchereau and
13 Steinman have indicated that while many of the
14 monoclonal antibodies are not specific, they are
15 nonetheless very useful in identifying dendritic
16 cells. Two of these antigens were mentioned this
17 morning. Or one of the reagents was CD-83 which
18 recognizes an immunoglobulin superfamily member and
19 P-55 which is an actin binding protein. We learned
20 this morning that the function of that is not known.
21 The reason it's called an actin binding protein is
22 on the basis of its homology.

23 Some of the things that I think people
24 should start directing their attention to is the
25 absolute count in whole blood and I will come to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that at the end of my talk, also, yields in
2 apheresis, what's happening to these markers during
3 culture and the final product. There's some concern
4 here because in the final product we see values like
5 in 1 to 5 percent dendritic cell cells and other
6 investigators say that they have 30 to 40 percent.
7 That's a tremendous amount of variation.

8 Some of the sources of variation,
9 although this was from an earlier study that we did,
10 I think that these are universal. A lot of flow
11 cytometer operators don't have a unified instrument
12 set up. They don't know what you mean when you say
13 a calibration curve. And compensation controls, I
14 will tell you, that in the beginning we were quite
15 cavalier about those and then believed that we
16 became very intellectual and sophisticated about
17 them. Yesterday afternoon in a two-hour session
18 with Carlton Stewart, I realized that all of our
19 ideas concerning controls for color compensation
20 have been wrong.

21 Saturation staining is often not
22 accomplished and when you're looking for rare
23 numbers of cells, I think you need to consider the
24 so-called Lyse and No Wash procedure. If you're
25 looking at

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 CD-34 cells in an unmobilized preparation where
2 there's 1 to 5 per microliter and you do one
3 centrifugation and lose half or all, I think you
4 would agree that a Lyse No Wash procedure is useful.

5 I can't stress the need to evaluate and
6 not only methods of Lyses, but fixation and not all
7 antigens are the same. Some further considerations.
8 Two and three color is probably a minimum. No
9 regulatory body recommends single parameter or a
10 single color flow cytometry any more. It has no
11 power for resolution. I think that it would be very
12 useful if a consensus panel of reagents for blood
13 dendritic cells can be defined. I may come back to
14 that in the panel session and also a consensus
15 protocol and a local protocol, so that you can have
16 side by side comparison. Otherwise, you will have
17 two laboratories in the same institute doing an
18 analysis on the same sample and getting two
19 different answers and they will say that the other
20 lab is wrong and they're right and go on their way.
21 You have to do a side by side comparison. But even
22 that is not without its problems. Collect adequate
23 number of the events. I think that depending -- if
24 you're down at the 1 in 5 percent level, I would
25 suggest that you start collecting 50,000 events and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 not just 5,000 and 10,000 events that are used so
2 commonly.

3 Fluorochrome configuration, it's very
4 important. What fluorochrome do you put on the
5 monoclonal antibody and what combination of reagents
6 do you put together? And gating strategy I will
7 touch upon in just a moment and I will also in a
8 subsequent slide mention quantitative flow cytometry
9 and training, I won't elaborate on.

10 Beads. Use them. There are six
11 manufacturers. Choose one and use them. It will
12 give you a calibration curve. Pick a set of beads
13 where the cells that you're looking at, the
14 fluorescence intensity falls between two of the
15 beads and then you can extrapolate off of your
16 calibration curve.

17 Gating strategy. Basically, this is a
18 lineage negative approach. Label everything in
19 there that you're interested in and put the double
20 negatives, the basophils and the dendritics down in
21 the third quadrant or the double negative quadrant.
22 Recently, there's a monoclonal antibody that's been
23 identified, ILT3 that appears to be specific for
24 dendritic cells in that particular scatter gate.
25 Also, more recently in addition to CD83, a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 monoclonal antibody labeled DC-LAMP, a lysosome
2 associated membrane glycoprotein which was mentioned
3 this morning, has also been reported.

4 The reason I listed that is that is a
5 cytoplasmic, an intercellular antigen and that has a
6 little more stringent requirements in flow cytometry
7 than surface markers.

8 If you do this approach where you
9 essentially identify the populations there using
10 that cocktail approach which was actually first used
11 in looking at stem cells in the mouse and then later
12 applied to stem cells in the human, you see that in
13 that double negative quadrant there's a group of
14 cells and if you come over here to the -- I guess I
15 have a pointer here, well, I'm shooting myself.

16 (Laughter.)

17 Anyway, here's an isotype control. Here
18 is the ILT3 isolating the dendritic cells separate
19 from the CD34 cells. You can also isolate them
20 using -- see them using CD34 in HLADR and when you
21 put the HLADR and the ITL3 together, you get co-
22 expression.

23 Now if you take that same approach and
24 add a third antibody in a cocktail on this axis, you
25 are able to identify the basophils and the CD34 stem

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cells hematopoietic progenitor cells and you have
2 nice isolation of the dendritic cells.

3 I want to point this out to you that
4 this is a sample of whole blood and when I started
5 reading this material, one would have thought that
6 dendritic cells were a real rare event in
7 unmobilized blood. At least in this study it would
8 appear that about four tenths of a percent of
9 dendritic cell is somewhere in between the number of
10 resting or unmobilized stem cells and basophils.
11 That should make the task a little bit easier, but
12 this data needs to be confirmed.

13 I am going to close on just to bring to
14 your attention two reports. This was an NIH
15 consensus report concerning flow cytometry and
16 there's a subcommittee report in that that involves
17 standardization. Finally, just recently there is an
18 issue of Cytometry, the entire issue is a special
19 issue dealing with the emerging consensus of
20 quantitative fluorescence and that was in October of
21 this year. And on that note, I'll end.

22 Thank you.

23 (Applause.)

1 DR. STEINMAN: So again because of time
2 constraints, we're going to move on and we'll have
3 the questions and discussions at the end.

4 Now you've heard a lot of new terms so
5 far, but I wonder if you thought about what you call
6 a workshop that has 500 participants. It's called a
7 Texas Workshop.

8 (Laughter.)

9 Our next speaker is Jacques Banchemereau
10 from Texas.

11 DR. BANCHEREAU: Good afternoon,
12 everybody. I'd like to thank Raj Puri and the
13 organizers for inviting me to talk with you about
14 the dendritic cellite. As you can see here, for
15 those who have never seen dendritic cells, that's
16 how they look, although we have changed a little bit
17 the color recently, thanks to our confocal.

18 As Raj told us, the dendritic cells are
19 present in the major form in the tissues and they're
20 derived from nonproliferating precursors that
21 circulate in the blood, that about 4 percent cells
22 that we just heard about circulate in the blood and
23 the cell originating from the proliferating
24 progenitor in the bone marrow.

1 Now whenever a problem arises, a virus,
2 a bacterium or whatever, the dendritic cell's job is
3 to capture those antigens and then to transform them
4 into the secondary lymphoid organ where they will
5 present the antigen to the specific lymphocytes. I
6 mean during that time, the dendritic cells may turn
7 into this major form, then permits the activation
8 proliferation of the T-cells and also the B cells
9 eventually die by apoptosis and the T-cells that
10 have multiplied are now going back into the
11 periphery and can go back to the site of injury
12 because of the expression of various addition
13 molecules on those inflamed endoterial cells.

14 Now the T-cells can directly act on the
15 cells which have been injured or it may be an
16 indirect activation of either using the feline K
17 cells. Now I'm going to show you some slides which
18 represent, sort of a view of dendritic cells which
19 are different from the ones you might have seen.
20 Dendritic cells are sitting here in tissues like
21 those flamingos in Lake Kibazu and whenever the
22 antigen or the pathogen come in, the dendritic cells
23 just fly out of the tissue, carrying the antigen.
24 They are lending in the secondary lymphoid organ and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 there they do their job which is to select the rare
2 antigen specific T-cells here, a zebra --

3 (Laughter.)

4 -- in the middle of the nonspecific T-
5 cell of the new. And now the job of the dendritic
6 cells is to allow the activation of that zebra and
7 its suspension into the head of the zebra.

8 (Laughter.)

9 Now they will now be able to really do
10 the job. The final job of the dendritic cells is to
11 allow the differentiation of the zebra into
12 cytotoxic effect on as this series of crocodiles.

13 (Laughter.)

14 So basically when you want to do
15 dendritic cell therapy you've got to get the
16 flamingos and get the flamingos to identify the
17 zebras and get the zebras to become a crocodile and
18 that's basically all what we are trying to do.

19 (Laughter.)

20 The problem that we have had with
21 dendritic cells is we know there was a homogenous
22 population of pink birds, but it is not. There is a
23 considerable heterogeneity between the white birds,
24 the pink birds and the deep red birds. And this is
25 the heterogeneity which is in the label of the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 maturation level from a precursor to an immature to
2 a mature dendritic cell. This is the heterogeneity
3 in terms of the various subsets of dendritic cells.
4 And up until a few weeks ago I would say I have seen
5 in the blood three different precursors of dendritic
6 cells. I would be convinced that the monocytes
7 would be precursors of dendritic cells as well as
8 macrophages, that there is a population of CD11C
9 plus cells that Raj had identified that we had
10 identified and others have identified which we felt
11 were the germinal center of dendritic cell
12 precursors and that there was also a population of
13 CD11C minus dendritic cell precursors which we had
14 identified in my former operation in France as being
15 a plasmacytoid T-cell, very interesting population
16 of dendritic cells.

17 I do believe now that there's a little
18 less because of the specific experiment. We have
19 sorted the CD11C plus dendritic cell precursors from
20 the blood and have found that whenever we grow those
21 cells with GM and TNF, they become dendritic cells
22 while if we grow them with M-CSF they become
23 macrophages.

24 Now furthermore, you see that when they
25 have been grown with GM and TNF they are very strong

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 activator of allogeneic CD14 sensors where I've told
2 you the proponent assay for all our testing, while
3 the macrophage would be for activators. So we do
4 believe today that this is a kind of an activated or
5 different shaded monocyte that has that dual
6 potential. We believe, actually, that a monocyte
7 that is cultured with R4 is basically that cell and
8 possibly in the circulation that cell may be a
9 monocyte that has encountered L4 possibly from mass
10 cells or others.

11 Just one words about the CD11C minus
12 dendritic cell precursor. We believe this cell is
13 really the human equivalent to the mouse lymphoid
14 dendritic cell. We believe it's for one reason is
15 that Hurgenspitz has identified in the blood of --
16 in the human blood a precursor of T-cells which
17 actually has the characteristics of those dendritic
18 cells. Furthermore, Hurgenspitz has also
19 demonstrated that dose plasmocytic T-cells, the
20 CD11C minus dendritic cell express the pre-T-cell
21 receptor.

22 So we just know very little about,
23 except for the very important finding of Joung Jin
24 Liu now with Denex that doses may be important
25 inducing TH2 responses.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 In vitro work has certainly sparkled a
2 lot of enthusiasm for dendritic cells and their use
3 in therapy. Now really two major pathways, as you
4 know, the pathways that we've been involved in
5 identifying from the CD34 progenitors when
6 Christophe Coe was a student, in France and the
7 pathway that Ralph Steinman and Antonio Lanzoni-
8 Vecchia have popularized from the blood monocytes.

9 I'm going to talk mostly about that
10 because there will be more talks about this during
11 this day. While we have been focusing on the assay
12 and telling you that there are actually two subsets
13 originated from CD34, subsets which is a typical
14 Langerhans cell subsets which are the dendritic
15 cells in the epithelial and the subset which we like
16 to call the interstitial DC subset which is in most
17 of the other tissues.

18 That came, really, in experiments done
19 by Christophe almost 10 years ago now when he
20 identified that TNF alpha was synergizing with
21 either IL3 or
22 GM-CSF to induce strong proliferation of C34
23 progenitor and that was at that time totally
24 unusual, so Christophe had grown the CD34 from the
25 cow blood with L3 and you have good expansion here

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 after 8 days or with GM-CSF here after 20 days. But
2 addition of TNF was resulting in a considerable
3 expansion. I insist on that slide, not only because
4 it took us into Texas, so to speak, but also because
5 it is showing a considerable expansion. The
6 problems that we have met with the human blood, CD34
7 by comparison to the cow blood. And although also
8 those experiments we have done with fetal calf serum
9 and what I will report afterwards is not done with
10 fetal calf serum.

11 So when Christophe looked at those
12 cells, the C34 cells neither expressed CD14 nor
13 CD1A, but after Day 3 or Day 5 we had two
14 populations clearly showing up, a CD14 plus and a
15 CD1A plus and then when the days pass by, Day 7, 8,
16 we start to see another population in between and at
17 the end we only have CD1A cells.

18 Now Christophe has done all the studies
19 and demonstrated that indeed the cells with the CD1A
20 are true Langerhans cells because they express
21 Birbeck granule, because they express the lag
22 antigen which is associated to Birbeck granule.

23 On the other side, the cells which have
24 the CD14 and which even become CD1A positive are the
25 other dendritic cell population and myloid

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 interstitial DC which expresses CD68 and something
2 typical of the dermal dendritic cells which is
3 factor 13A of coagulation. So we can isolate two
4 different subsets within this population and it was
5 for us an attraction to do the clinical studies with
6 those cells for that very reason.

7 We found with a lot of effort, we found
8 one major difference between those two populations
9 in addition to those phenotypic differences. It was
10 an assay relying on studying the B cells. Here in
11 this menage a trois where the dendritic cells, the
12 T-cells, and the B cells permit very efficient
13 immuno response, Christophe found that the
14 Langerhans cells of the interstitial dendritic cells
15 were both about to induce and enhance the B cell
16 proliferation, both about to induce the
17 differentiation of memory B cells into plasma cells,
18 but only the CD14 population, interstitial dendritic
19 cell population was able to induce what we call the
20 primary B cell reaction. That means to take a naïve
21 B cells and make it secrete IGM in a response to L2
22 and this is why we are very interested or so in
23 testing in vivo whether there will be considerable
24 differences between the dendritic cell population.

S A G CORP.

1 The Langerhans doesn't do the job at all, while this
2 population does the job.

3 Now that brings us with -- although we
4 start to have some idea about the population, we
5 haven't solved all the problems. We do believe that
6 the monocytes and the CD14 population really
7 correspond to the dermo dendritic cell and
8 interstitial dendritic cell population. Now where
9 the Langerhans cells come within that whole scheme
10 is complex to explain at the moment, but in view of
11 the research of Frederick Geissman who said that
12 with TGF beta I could get monocytes to become
13 Langerhans cells, something I know is being
14 discussed by other groups.

15 So that is a question that is not
16 entirely clarified, at least in my mind. If you
17 have a solution, help me, please.

18 Of course, doing in vitro studies is
19 fine, but to really prove the point, you really need
20 to do the in vivo studies and it was very difficult
21 for me to be in the hospital nearby, the research
22 center in Lyons. So we decided in a positive way,
23 we found a hospital and built a research center to
24 do those experiments and this is why I moved to
25 Baylor at Dallas where we want to study the role of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 dendritic cells and induction of immunity in cancer
2 and in infectious disease and we will discuss that
3 next time.

4 To do that, we have several
5 possibilities, of course, which is the source of the
6 DC precursor/progenitor, the CD34 HPC is, of course,
7 one which we developed and can talk a bit about the
8 monocytes. There is the FH3L APC and we're going to
9 hear today about this puzzling cell, the fibrocytes.
10 The problem also with CD34 HPC is immense. It's not
11 so simple because according to the way you mobilize
12 the C34 HPC in the blood, either you take it from
13 the bone marrow, or mobilize with GCSF, GM and FH3L,
14 we will see differences.

15 The problem of the isolation of the
16 progenitor and precursors, what methods, what
17 technique, purified, not purified. This is going to
18 be important. It adds cost, but it also adds bias
19 in the population that we're isolating.

20 The problem that we're going to have to
21 generate the dendritic cells, ex vivo, we will hear
22 about making dendritic cells without cytokines. I
23 have not been able to do it and the problem of
24 putting the cytokine is a problem for, of course,
25 numerous reasons. We need to worry about the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 quality of the DC and what are the criteria that we
2 use for releasing those cytokines.

3 Well, manipulating dendritic cells can
4 be done at three levels and today I'm going to be
5 insisting on one which is the closest to the clinic,
6 is this one where we just manipulated them ex vivo.
7 We load them. And I want to discuss in great length
8 the loading of the dendritic cells and then the
9 reinjection.

10 We are now studying dendritic cells
11 generated by recirculating with GCSF. We are
12 isolating the CD34 HPC and we grow them with GM-CSF
13 and TNF. We started with the stem cell factor. We
14 are now doing experiments with flt3L since we didn't
15 see that many differences.

16 Today, actually, our first patient is
17 showing up to get his GCSF treatment and Monday he
18 is going to get his apheresis. We're going to
19 purify the CD34 cells on Tuesday. The CD34 cells
20 are going to be frozen in aliquots. What we're
21 going to do from Tuesday, we're going to ex vivo
22 generate the dendritic cells and first we will do a
23 launch. We will see whether those cells can be
24 giving dendritic cells. It's going to take about
25 two weeks. Once we are happy, we're really going to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 do the real experiments, throw the CD34 cells, grow
2 them and then load them. We are using KLH in our
3 experiments only in the fourth injection are we
4 using TT because of Ruff and Garontula experience
5 that this may really give fever if we are to put too
6 much of it. And then we are loading with the four
7 peptide of a MART GP100 tyrosinase MASH 3 which is
8 also a big problem is the loading of the peptide,
9 how do you load with the peptide and so forth. We
10 have been discussing that in great lengths with Myos
11 Null. We're going to try something. We hope it's
12 the best.

13 Now those dendritic cells are
14 administered in form of injection into a patient
15 every second week and the one question we have
16 decided being unable to address what is the best, we
17 say we're going to use part IV and part subcut or
18 intradermally probably and this is going to be in
19 three different sites. The dendritic cells that we
20 generate actually are dendritic cells at an
21 intermediate stage of differentiation. We don't
22 want fully immature. We don't want fully mature.
23 We want in between. We want dendritic cells as
24 those that have encountered the pathogen that will
25 migrate optimally to the lymph node. The numbers

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that we're injecting are between 10 to 5 and 10 to 6
2 DC per kilo for 70 kilo individual. No comment on
3 that. It's between 7 million and 70 million, four
4 times. And one month after the end of the trial of
5 the dendritic cell injection, we will treat the
6 patient with interferon alpha because it's an
7 approved therapy of melanoma and more important to
8 us, because if we generate the crocodiles, we want
9 the crocodiles to recognize the antigen which is the
10 MHC Class 1 and we hope that the MHC Class 1 will be
11 off regulated by interferon alpha on those cells.

12 Now a lot of issues. When we have used
13 and when we are using for our cells, the criteria of
14 cell expansion, the criteria of the percentage of
15 the CD1A and CD14 and the ability to induce T-cell
16 responses. Of course, using those criteria, we had
17 to study all the parameters of the purification
18 serum or the nonserum, the length of the culture,
19 the stages and so forth.

20 The cultures are presently done in a
21 serum-free condition where we have an expansion
22 which is between 1.9 and 3.4, expansion that is
23 reaching a maximum after 10 days. We start cells at
24 5×10^5 per mil and we expend about three fourths.
25 The third that we generate contain both CV14 and

S A G CORP.

1 CV1A population as we have seen with the cow blood,
2 in spite of the absence of serum. Now the
3 percentage of positive cells is variable. We have
4 between 10 and 30 percent of CD1A cells. We have
5 between 25 and 40 percent of CD14 cells. All the
6 other cells are Class 2 positive, are DR positive
7 and we believe they represent some kind of
8 undifferentiated monocyte precursors or whatever,
9 something like that. Those cells reach a maximum
10 after 9 days of culturing usually. Now if we add
11 autologous plasma to the culture, we don't get an
12 increase of both cells usually. It doesn't help us.
13 In both cell types can induce a neural reaction, be
14 that's totally serum-free or be that in autologous
15 plasma. The one consideration we are doing now is
16 we are testing, we will be testing for each of our
17 patients there on plasma because they have been
18 mobilized. At the moment we haven't been able to do
19 that specifically.

20 So for releasing the dendritic cell, we
21 just want to have cells which are more than 80
22 percent viable. Two hours before administration we
23 do Giemsa staining and they don't look like
24 flamingos. The phenotype we do study two hours
25 before administration Class 2, CD86, CD1A, CD14. We

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 have a gram staining 24 hours before administration,
2 a bacteria culture 48 hours before administration
3 and then every region is tested for endotoxin
4 content.

5 Now this is a trial that we are doing
6 with the peptide. And for us it's kind of a setting
7 of the scheme. Many alternatives can be used to
8 load the dendritic cells. We will hear about
9 loading with RNA from chem. We will possibly hear
10 about recommended polypeptide. We will hear about
11 viruses to transduce the DC. We are very interested
12 by a finding of Nina Bhardwaj with the capture of
13 apoptotic body and I will summarize a bit what we're
14 doing now and the question because we are
15 considering our first trial in this context.

16 Monocyte-derived DC can capture
17 apoptotic body, about 25 to 30 percent of the cells
18 will capture apoptotic body as measured by 7AD ADA
19 stainings. 7AD is stains DNA. Here you see with
20 confocal microscopy for section of the monocyte-
21 derived dendritic cells one hour after the capture.
22 You see here the first two compartments. You don't
23 see the tumor body. Here in the next section you
24 see the tumor apoptotic body in red because it is a
25 red stain and then you see the Class 2 which are not

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fused. If you leave four hours of incubation, you
2 see the fusing of the apoptotic body and the Class 2
3 compartments possibly along for the loading of the
4 Class 2 and Class 1 antigen. Actually, to
5 demonstrate that it is very simple to take the
6 monocytes, make them the DC image, show the DC as
7 Ralph told us, and then load the DCs with
8 EBV-LCL prostate cancer, melanoma or breast cancer
9 apoptotic bodies and then test with the T-cells from
10 this individual will proliferate in response to the
11 antigen.

12 Dendritic cells is loaded with EBV-LCL,
13 a low EBV-LCL, can induce the proliferation of CD8
14 T-cells provided we see fully ligand activated DC and
15 IL-2. So we have a CD8 proliferation here while
16 macrophage, as Ralph told us earlier, are not able
17 to induce the proliferation of those CD8 T-cells.

18 Now should we use necrotic or apoptotic
19 body? That is really in some way a very semantic
20 issue and we can discuss that later, but the way we
21 induce apoptosis results in capture which is not as
22 efficient as the capture of necrotic body yet with
23 the apoptotic body, we get very good T-cells, CD4CL
24 response. We don't get that with a necrotic body.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now this in that case we have loaded
2 with prostate tumor cell lines and we get a strong
3 proliferation of the T-cells which are autologous to
4 the dendritic cells.

5 The purification of those dendritic
6 cells is going to be a problem. Here the monocytes
7 are enriched by adherence. Here, they're enriched
8 by depletion. When we do depletion, we get better
9 dendritic cells or purer dendritic cells, all of
10 them being CD1A positive, while we do adherence, we
11 don't get them all to be CD1A. So it's going to be
12 a question, of course, this is more expensive.

13 The problem of the tumor cells as Raj
14 Puri told us is a big problem, autologous tumor
15 tissue, allogeneic tumor tissue, what is the
16 criteria we need to use for those tumor cell lines,
17 what is the matrix for generating those tumor cell
18 bodies from apoptotic body, necrotic body, should we
19 fractionate? What is the quality of those bodies,
20 the composition, all those are going to be extremely
21 important questions that this small audience of 500
22 people will certainly address.

23 And the way to load the body. That
24 brings us to a possibility of manipulating directly
25 the product, the crocodiles. I mean we can how from

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the breast cancer patient receive heavy
2 chemotherapy, generate the crocodiles in vitro
3 whether they generate them in vivo and regenerate
4 the crocodile to the cancer patient and providing
5 the cancer patient with her chemotherapy which
6 otherwise would kill all the
7 T-cells.

8 There's finally another way of
9 manipulating the dendritic cell system is directly
10 in vivo with the DC mobilization. And so the
11 Immunex product, the fH3L is an extremely important
12 molecule in that respect. Now I just want to show
13 you one slide which is the monocyte from lymphoma
14 patient before fH3L and the monocytes after fH3L.
15 So not only do we increase monocytes, not only do we
16 increase by 5 to 50 fold the DC precursors as shown
17 by the Immunex group, but also we get totally
18 activated cells which may be dramatic antigen
19 presenting cells.

20 And very importantly, in a study done on
21 two of my former patients, these T-cells are in
22 vitro energetic while after two cycles of fH3L, the
23 T-cells of the patient now respond in vitro to the
24 tetanus toxoid which can bring us a lot of question.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 When the work was done in this new dream
2 team at Baylor with particularly I'd like to mention
3 Carolina Palucka and Maya Nouri-Shiraz for their
4 work with the apoptotic body, the work on confocal
5 was made by Jean Davou, we have done with the work
6 on Fed. 3 with the group of Immunex with Charlie
7 Marichevsky and Daniel Caron. Clinical trials are
8 led by Joe Fay. The clinical trial in the prostate
9 cancer will be led by urologist Mike Goldstein and
10 the work is being done in Baylor Institute and
11 Center of Immunology Research and thank you for your
12 attention.

13 (Applause.)

14 DR. STEINMAN: Well, that was great,
15 Jacques. We'll again save the questions for the end
16 of the afternoon. You must stay.

17 So we'll move on to David Urdal from
18 Dendreon who will talk about clinical trials and
19 product development with dendritic cells.

20 DR. URDAL: Thank you, Ralph. I'd like
21 to thank the organizers for the kind invitation to
22 come and speak this afternoon and describe to you
23 some of the work that we're doing in developing
24 immunotherapies around the use of antigen pulse
25 dendritic cells. I thought what I'd do this

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 afternoon is organize my talk in the following way,
2 that I'll give a very brief description of the
3 biology of the dendritic cell. We've already had a
4 lovely introduction to that by both Ralph this
5 morning and Jacques just before me. Jacques is
6 almost an impossible act to follow. I have no
7 zebras or other animals on my slides.

8 I'll spend most of my time talking about
9 the Dendreon process and what we're doing to really
10 distill this type of a process into one that we can
11 actually take through the clinic and hopefully some
12 day into the market place and then very briefly at
13 the end talk about some of the applications that
14 we're making of this process to the treatment of
15 cancer and some of the status of where those studies
16 are.

17 As we've heard, dendritic cells are the
18 most potent antigen presenting cells in the immune
19 system. They play a central role at conducting the
20 initiation of recognition of antigen by T helper and
21 cytolytic T-cells by their capacity to process
22 antigen and present that antigen in the context of
23 MHC Class 2 or Class 1 molecules, leading to
24 ultimately the creation of effector cells that have

S A G CORP.

1 the capacity to eliminate virally infected or tumor
2 cells.

3 Not just the MHC, T-cell receptor
4 interaction that mediates this, of course, but
5 there's a constellation of co-stimulatory markers
6 that make dendritic cells the potent antigen
7 presenting cells that they are. This is just a
8 subset of the ones we've already heard a great deal
9 about, including
10 CD-80, 86, IKM1 or CD54 and LFA3.

11 We've also heard of a number of ways
12 that antigens can be presented to dendritic cells
13 and if I can draw your attention to the bottom of
14 this slide, clearly, the forms of antigen that can
15 be used include whole protein, DNA or RNA and coding
16 the protein antigen or synthetic peptides as well as
17 we've heard, tumor lysates as well as whole tumor
18 cells that would be able to interact with dendritic
19 cells in presenting their antigens to those cells.

20 Clearly, depending on the chemical form
21 of the antigen that you pick will determine to some
22 extent the dendritic cell that you may wish to look
23 at in the clinical situation. For example, peptides
24 that you might want to exogenously load on to
25 dendritic cells, you might choose a mature dendritic

S A G CORP.

1 cell that has its mature and high intensity display
2 of MHC Class 1 or 2 molecules on the surface. In
3 contrast, if you're working with protein or DNA
4 which would require uptake by dendritic cells and
5 processing of the antigens into the epitopes that
6 can be expressed on MHC Class 1 and 2 it would be
7 driven to work with cells at an earlier stage of
8 dendritic cell differentiation.

9 As we've heard, the dendritic cell is
10 derived ultimately from the hematopoietic progenitor
11 cell, the effector cells that we're talking about in
12 most of the studies this afternoon are either
13 derived from that cell ex vivo with the appropriate
14 cocktail of cytokines provided or for monocytes,
15 again with the appropriate cocktail of cytokines.
16 And as I'll describe we're working with cells that
17 we isolate directly from the peripheral blood to
18 derive potent antigen presenting cells that we take
19 into the clinic.

20 Having their origin from the
21 hematopoietic progenitor cell, the dendritic cell
22 clearly originates in the bone marrow. It travels
23 through the peripheral blood to take up its
24 residence in tissues where under its natural biology
25 it would come in contact with antigen, find its way

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 to lymph nodes and see the high flow through of
2 naive T-cells from which it can pick the zebras that
3 Jacques alluded to.

4 Clearly, what we're doing then in a
5 clinical and a commercial setting is finding a way
6 by which we can isolate dendritic cell precursors
7 from some source and in our case we're looking at a
8 blood collection to take those dendritic cell
9 precursors, present antigen and induce their
10 maturation in vitro by some fashion and then having
11 created the antigen loaded dendritic cell, reinfuse
12 that cell back into the patient.

13 And of course what we're looking at then
14 is the process whereby the patient is coming into
15 the clinic. Chances are they will look at pheresis
16 as being performed at an axillary site. The white
17 blood cells are being delivered to a manufacturing
18 facility where the cell separation takes place. The
19 antigens and other raw materials are being provided
20 through that cell culture to create the antigen
21 loaded dendritic cells which are then delivered back
22 to the clinic or reinfused back into the patient.

23 Now the process that Dendreon's been
24 working on really had its biologic validation, if
25 you will, by studies that were done at Stanford by

S A G CORP.

1 Frank Shale and Ron Liedeslat, together with Ed
2 Engelman looking at dendritic cells that had been
3 isolated from peripheral blood, pulsed with
4 idiotypes specific to the B cell lymphoma that they
5 were studying in those patients and the results were
6 quite striking. They clearly were able to induce
7 very profound cell mediated immunity against
8 idiootype and they found that cell mediated immunity
9 associated with clear clinical benefit in a number
10 of these patients that had failed all other forms of
11 therapy.

12 The process is one whereby the dendritic
13 cell is isolated or precursors are enriched by two
14 buoyant density steps, the first one which is
15 primarily to remove blood cells and granular sites
16 and the second to deplete the culture primarily of
17 monocytes so you have a high density fraction of
18 cells which is then carried forward into a culture
19 in the present of antigen over 40 hour period,
20 harvested and then antigen pulsed dendritic cells
21 resulting from that.

22 Some of the modifications that we've
23 done to that original concept that was described at
24 Stanford was to really look at a means by which we
25 could attempt to close this process and actually

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 make it as controlled as we possibly could so we
2 have a buoyant density medium that we work with
3 which we've used in a variety of therapeutic
4 settings. It's a serum-free process. There's no
5 exogenous cytokines that we add. It's readily
6 scaled up for the treatment of patients and it's
7 using sterile disposable medical grade devices
8 throughout, again, with an eye towards creating a
9 process that you could imagine once effective in the
10 clinic, being used commercially.

11 The principle of density separation is
12 familiar to everyone in the audience, I'm sure, but
13 it's a means by which a collection of cells can be
14 overlaid onto a buoyant density medium following
15 centrifugation, light cells float, heavy cells sink
16 and you can separate the light cells from the heavy
17 cells in this particular device by simple
18 decantation because of this insert which creates an
19 airlock between the two chambers.

20 The process in action is one also that I
21 wanted to note is one that we can minimize the open
22 manipulation of cells by the kind of connections
23 between the blood and the buoyant density solution
24 in the container and the size of this container with
25 tubing and the size of this container is such that

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 we can actually process up to 50 billion cells at a
2 time or the cells that would be contained in a full
3 apheresis unit.

4 This is demonstrating the loading of the
5 cell preparation and to the upper chamber of the
6 device. This slide is showing the underlaying then
7 of the buoyant density material creating a sharp
8 interface between the solutions. This is showing
9 following centrifugation. The red cells are now
10 located in the lower compartment and the interface
11 cells are in the upper compartment and then showing
12 simple removal of that particular fraction of cells
13 by decantation in the setting. So the time line
14 that the leukophoresis product as delivered to cell
15 processing facility over the first three to four
16 hours. The two buoyant density steps were
17 performed, resulting in the establishment of the
18 cell culture which is then -- goes in the incubator
19 for a period of 40 hours at which time the cells are
20 harvested and washed and returned to the clinic for
21 reinfusion into the patient.

22 The process of leukophoresis is
23 performed in an approved facility in accordance with
24 SOPs that we monitor as well as qualify. The
25 processing facility that we're working in is Class

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 10,000 clean room and all open steps are being
2 performed in Class 100 biological safety cabinets.
3 The separation again uses disposable medical grade
4 devices to maintain stability and then we have a
5 full panel of final product QA and QC release tests
6 that I'll get into in just a minute.

7 Clearly, the process of incubating these
8 precursors for 40 hours results in the
9 differentiation of dendritic cells into mature cells
10 that have the hallmarks of the dendritic cells that
11 we've heard a lot about today already. The process
12 by which this occurs is dependent on the composition
13 and concentration of the culture inoculum as well as
14 the nature of the culture surface and material and a
15 lot of studies have been done to define those before
16 we took these products into the clinic. But clearly
17 one thing that we do see is if you look at the
18 culture prior to its incubation period and then look
19 at it 40 hours later, you see cells that have
20 greatly increased their display of CD40 and CD54 and
21 a huge increase in display of HLA-DR. Unless you
22 can quantify and actually characterize the cultures
23 after the 40 hour incubation as having a population
24 of cells that clearly display many of the markers
25 that we've already heard about today that are

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 associated with the capacity of these cells to
2 potently interact with naive T-cells.

3 If you purify those cells from culture
4 you can also establish in vitro that purified
5 dendritic cells together with naive T-cells and
6 antigen will result over time in cultures that
7 express high levels, excuse me, I'm missing a slide,
8 but the dendritic cells will show over time that
9 they've greatly increased in their capacity to
10 stimulate a mixed lymphocyte reaction. Again, MLRs
11 are used frequently as a measure of antigen-
12 presenting cells in vitro and what's shown here is
13 the slide I just started to describe, but clearly if
14 you put up dendritic cells together with naive T-
15 cells and antigen in culture, you see very high
16 levels of IL12 production and gamma interferon
17 production in these cultures which is a hallmark of
18 the TH1-type response.

19 And if you look then at some of the
20 lymphoid preparations that we've made from patients
21 that have undergone infusions of antigen-pulsed
22 dendritic cells we can see the same phenomenon that
23 in the lymphoproliferative assays that we do in
24 these patients that we see the cytokines produced
25 are gamma interferon. There's no L4 that we can

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 detect, again reflecting a Th-1 type response that
2 we've engendered in those patients.

3 The characteristics then are the cells
4 we've manufactured that there's a functional
5 maturation. There's an increase in MLR activity.
6 They're capable of stimulating naive T lymphocyte
7 responses. In most of the studies I've just showed
8 you, they were KLH, but we looked at a variety of
9 both peptide and protein antigens in vitro and the
10 type of response that we can readily measure is a
11 Th-1 type response, the CF regulation of cell memory
12 molecules that are associated with potent antigen
13 presenting cells and morphology, although I don't
14 have a morphology slide, is consistent with the
15 kinds of cells that we've seen in the previous
16 speakers.

17 Now if we look at the question of
18 potency testing, clearly assays like the mixed
19 lymphocyte reaction is an assay that's a seven day
20 assay. The manufacturing process that I've just
21 described is one whereby we're harvesting the cells
22 in the morning of the third day and we're delivering
23 those cells back into the patient within six hours
24 after that time. So the assay that requires a seven
25 day incubation or an assay that might be a more

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antigen-specific assay is really an assay that is
2 not amenable as a release task. We've actually been
3 doing MLRs in all the studies that we have in the
4 clinic at the moment, just so that we can collect
5 that data, but it's not an assay that's truly that
6 useful to us in a manufacturing scheme to actually
7 release the product by.

8 Now what I'd like to suggest in the next
9 couple of slides is an alternative way of actually
10 looking at some of the co-stimulatory markers and
11 their expression and picked CD-54 by means of
12 example, that it not only serves as a means by which
13 we can quantify dendritic cells that have been
14 induced to mature in these cultures, but it's also
15 a marker that is associated with the potency and
16 capacity of these cells to actually interact with
17 naive T-cells. CD-54 in this slide is showing that
18 in an in vitro induction of a naive T-cell response
19 against KLH, but you can completely inhibit the
20 capacity of these cultures to do so by inclusion of
21 monoclonal antibodies directed against CD 54.
22 Controlled antibodies do not do that, indicating
23 that clearly
24 CD-54 is involved in naive T-cell priming which has
25 certainly been known for some time. It's a robust

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 stain. It is a stain that allows us to readily
2 quantify the number of cells in our cultures. It's
3 reliably regulated in all of the patient samples
4 that we've worked at. Clearly, the sorting
5 experiments that we've done have indicated that all
6 of the cells that we are at least responsible for
7 the kind of activity we're seeing are in that 54
8 positive cell population.

9 If you look then at -- this is kind of a
10 busy slide, but it shows that the process of
11 manufacturing is one that we control throughout by
12 the system that we've designed to minimize the
13 exposure of our cultures to any exogenous agents and
14 then we do in-process testing which includes
15 monitoring cell counts and viability throughout the
16 process. We do in-process sterility sampling
17 periodically to insure at the time of release that
18 the product, there's minimal likelihood that there's
19 be any microbial contamination. We also take
20 samples in all of our clinical testing and send out
21 for mycoplasma testing in addition to microbial
22 testing and endotoxin, and are currently looking at
23 our final release testing that would include
24 phenotype analysis by FACS, endotoxin release
25 testing at the time of harvest. Gram staining is a

S A G CORP.

1 test that we're doing at the moment and question
2 whether how much longer we'll continue collecting
3 MRL data, but it's certainly not an assay that
4 allows us to release the product by that test. But
5 nevertheless, it's an overall process that's one
6 that's allowed us to introduce very reproducible a
7 therapy into the patients that we've treated in a
8 very reliable fashion.

9 Now one thing I haven't talked about in
10 developing a therapy is that you have to have an
11 antigen to go along with the dendritic cells that
12 I've just talked about. By way of example, we have
13 an extensive program in the treatment of prostate
14 cancer with dendritic cell. Clearly dendritic cells
15 are isolated in the way that I've just described and
16 we're working with the recombinant fusion protein
17 that we call PA2024 and one of the underlying
18 assumptions that we're working with on this
19 particular molecule is that this is a recombinant
20 protein. It's purified by conventional purification
21 techniques and we're assuming that it will be viewed
22 as a well characterized biologic, even though it's
23 used entirely ex vivo in the pulsing of these cells.
24 But it's -- this particular antigen is related to
25 Prostatic Acid Phosphatase. It's a prostate

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 specific antigen and expressed on most prostate
2 adenoid carcinomas and we showed in our pre-clinical
3 package to the FDA for these studies that it was
4 both a CD-4 and a CTL target on cells expressing
5 this antigen, but clearly, this showing three lots
6 that we've manufactured in the vacuole virus
7 expression system, SDS polyomyogelic phoresis is
8 just one of many tests that we performed to
9 establish the purity of this particular recombinant
10 antigen and the other tests would include many of
11 the tests that we've already heard about. It would
12 include end terminal sequencing, HPLC and
13 immunochemical testing.

14 Now we've applied this type of approach
15 to a number of different cancers. We have an
16 extensive program in prostate cancer. It's in Phase
17 2 of development. We have studies underway in
18 multiple myeloma. Our next IND will be in breast
19 cancer and of course, we have the historical
20 interest that we follow at Stanford in the treatment
21 of B-cell lymphoma.

22 UCSF and Mayo were the sites at which
23 we're actually performing the antigen pulsed
24 dendritic cell studies in prostate cancer. We've
25 actually accrued more than 65 men to these studies

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 at this point. We're encouraged by in all patients
2 that we treated so far that we can readily detect
3 the presence of the lympho proliferative response to
4 the antigen that we're treating and we're also
5 seeing that as we complete our studies in Phase 2,
6 starting to talk with the FDA about what the design
7 of appropriate next stage and larger studies would
8 be.

9 We have an extensive program in myeloma
10 which has accrued more than 24 patients at this
11 point. Dr. McKenzie is our principal investigator
12 of this study. He recently presented a poster of
13 this work at the ASH meetings last weekend where he
14 was showing in the first 13 valuable patients that
15 have come out, we've actually seen 6 idiotype
16 specific responses in those patients which is very
17 encouraging and very much like what we've seen at
18 Stanford in Ron Levey's lab.

19 Clearly, in the clinical summary, we
20 find that dendritic cell therapy is very safe and
21 nontoxic. We've treated almost 100 individuals at
22 this point. We've given more than 250 infusions of
23 cells and really have a very well tolerated process
24 that we're looking at. There's no product related

S A G CORP.

1 adverse events which is consistent with the general
2 safety profile for many of the vaccines.

3 The dendritic cells are immunologically
4 active in vivo. We were able to measure the immune
5 responses and we're starting to see hence that that
6 immunological activity may actually be associated
7 potentially with a clinical benefit though. It's
8 too early for us to really assign any clinical
9 benefit at this point.

10 In looking forward, we actually are in
11 Phase 2 with prostate. Multiple myeloma is in Phase
12 2. Breast cancer we'll be submitting IND within the
13 next four months and then we recently licensed an
14 antigen from the Ludwig Cancer Institute called the
15 NYISO-1 antigen and we will see, hopefully, an IND
16 filed on this particular product within the next 12
17 to 16 months. So we're looking at applying the same
18 approach to as many cancers as we can over the next
19 couple of years.

20 Thank you very much for your attention.

21 DR. STEINMAN: Okay, we're going to move
22 along to Glenn Rice from Cytokine Networks to
23 discuss fibrocytes -- there you are -- and novel
24 antigen presenting cell.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. RICE: I too would like to thank the
2 organizers for the opportunity to speak today. I
3 was a little hesitant initially. The field of
4 fibrocytes is, as you will appreciate, much more
5 immature than that of dendritic cells. Hopefully, I
6 can give you a flavor of some of the potentials for
7 fibrocytes today throughout the talk.

8 What I thought I'd do is first start by
9 basically a historical perspective of how fibrocytes
10 were originally discovered. This work is primarily
11 the work of investigators at Picower Institute for
12 Medical Research in Manhasset, New York, primarily
13 led by Rick Bucola who is a Director there.

14 Rick Bucola and his co-workers were
15 studying wound response in tissue remodeling in scar
16 formation in mice using a frequently employed model
17 of wound healing responses which involved a cylastic
18 tubing that is inserted in the flanks of mice which
19 allows for one to periodically go in and withdraw
20 cells, fluid from the tube. This is a picture of
21 the cylastic tubing and it's filled with this
22 polyvinyl sponge, polyvinyl soaked alcohol sponge in
23 the middle. That's a dime on the left. And what
24 Rick and his colleagues found that while studying
25 the acute cellular responses involved in wound

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 repair, they noted a large number of adherent and
2 spindle shaped cells that rapidly migrated in with a
3 number of other inflammatory cell types. Initially,
4 within the first 24 hours and it represented about
5 10 to 20 percent of the total inflammatory exited
6 inside the chamber.

7 Now unlike your typical fibroblasts,
8 these cells as shown by flow cytometry, express both
9 CD-34 and Collagen 1 staining on the cell surface.
10 This is an EM of a fibrocyte taken by Rick and his
11 colleagues. Morphologically very distinct from
12 circulating leukocytes and display a prominent cell
13 surface projections intermediate in size between
14 microvilli and pseudopodia. Cell surface phenotype
15 has been extensively characterized by a number of
16 investigators, refocus that a little bit, using flow
17 cytometry and as you can see this is a positive
18 expression for fibrocytes. They express both
19 Collagen 1 and Collagen 3 expression on the cell
20 surface. They have an expression on the leukocyte
21 common antigen, CD-45 RO. They also express CD-34
22 as I mentioned and they surprisingly had a number of
23 molecules that are associated with antigen
24 expression including MHC Class 2, CD-11A, -54 and -
25 58.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now just as important, negative
2 phenotyping. They did not express a number of
3 markers for monocytes and macrophages including
4 esterase, CD-4, CD-14 and CD-16. They do not
5 express T-cell receptor. They don't express markers
6 for epithelial cells. A Von Gullabran factor,
7 endothelial cells is negative. Alpha actin for
8 smooth muscle cells is also similarly negative.
9 Also CD-83, not shown here, is also negative.

10 Now to assess the capacity of fibrocytes
11 to present an antigen, autologous T-cell
12 proliferation assays were performed and T-cells were
13 purified from peripheral blood from tetanus toxoid
14 immunized individuals and stimulated in vitro with
15 tetanus toxin together with fibrocytes shown in the
16 bottom panel as APCs.

17 You can see with relatively low number
18 there's a vigorous response to the soluble tetanus
19 toxin in the cultures. Now with the same T-cell
20 preps, dendritic cells and monocytes were compared
21 as has been found by a number of investigators.
22 Monocytes give very poor response. Dendritic cells
23 may give slightly higher response than fibrocytes,
24 but they do so at higher cell numbers.

25 Now the functional requirements for

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 HLADR-86 and -11A and -54 were determined by adding
2 antibodies prior to the stimulation and you can see
3 that each of these antibodies was sufficient to
4 block most of the response.

5 Now the functional responses of
6 fibrocytes isolated from mice were also compared.
7 Fibrocytes are fairly difficult to isolate from mice
8 as I'll talk about a little bit more in detail
9 later. But in this case, mice were immunized with
10 who AIDS, HIV antigens, proteins GP-120 or p24.
11 Five days later, the fibrocytes were isolated and
12 pulsed in vitro with the corresponding antigens and
13 you see a nice vigorous response to in vivo
14 immunization.

15 Now priming of naive T-cells has been
16 considered a function of professional APCs and to
17 test the ability of fibrocytes to prime naive T-
18 cells in vivo, fibrocytes were pulsed in vitro with
19 either p24 or gp120, washed, injected into the foot
20 pads. Five days later, proximal lymph nodes were
21 isolated, associated and pulsed with either gp120 or
22 p24.

23 As you can see with the p24 response,
24 pulse in vitro, there's a very vigorous response of
25 p24 and this can be blocked by adding immuno

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 magnetic selection of CD-4 cells prior to
2 stimulation. TP-120 pulsed cells, gp120 immunized
3 animals with p24 response showed no response. And
4 similarly gp120 showed a vigorous response.

5 Now that antigen pulsed fibrocyte, we're
6 not simply transferring antigen to other host APC
7 types was established by experiments which used
8 antigen pulsed fibrocytes from two parental strains
9 which were injected into F1 offspring mice. T-cell
10 reactivity of F1 offspring is confined predominantly
11 to antigen presented by one of the parent strains
12 and priming and re-stimulation to APCs must share
13 the same haplotype, so in this experiment, F1, that
14 is d times k, mice were injected with pulsed
15 fibrocytes from either parent, d or k, and five days
16 later the popliteal lymph nodes were isolated and
17 depleted of endogenous Class 2 MHC by immunomagnetic
18 selection. The F1 APC depleted lymph node cells
19 were then cultured with F1 cells were parent
20 strained d or k and swing cells as a source of the
21 APC, plus or minus gp120.

22 So the F1 APC depleted lymph node cells
23 were reactive to antigen in the presence of F1
24 re-stimulation APCs when priming with fibrocytes
25 from either parent. However, if a parental strain

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 was used as a source of re-stimulation, APC, the F1
2 APC depleted lymph nodes would only proliferate if
3 the priming fibrocytes were from the same strain.
4 So fibrocyte priming and APC re-stimulation only
5 occurs in the setting of a shared MHC haplotype.
6 Thus, fibrocytes do not merely function to deliver
7 antigen to other APCs, but rather act to directly
8 sensitize naive T-cells in an MHC dependent manner.

9 In addition, if one stains fibrocytes
10 with a red linker dye and injects them into the rear
11 footpads of mice and 24 hours later examines the
12 popliteal lymph nodes, they're actually about 5
13 percent of the injected fibrocytes can be found in
14 the lymph nodes as shown here.

15 Now the cytokine and growth factor
16 profile of phenotype expression of fibrocytes is
17 interesting and this is a way to estimate that using
18 a PCR so these are either immuno magnetic selected
19 T-cells, monocytes or fibrocytes and we're comparing
20 in this case the control CD-3. Of course, only the
21 T-cells will express CD-3, CD-14, of course, only on
22 monocytes; CD-34, fibrocytes. Collagen 1, as I
23 mentioned earlier, is a marker we use quite
24 extensively for fibrocytes as shown here, expressed
25 only in the fibrocytes following this column here.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 TNF, both in the monocytes and the fibrocytes, IL-1
2 beta in both. Interestingly, IL-10 is found in the
3 fibrocytes, at least at the MR and A level.

4 Fibrocytes express a number of different
5 chemokines, including MIP-1 alpha and beta, both
6 regulatable by IL-1, MIP-2 and the interferon
7 inducible chemokine as well.

8 PDGF alpha, as well as FGF, not shown
9 here is also expressed by fibrocytes, TGF beta, MCS,
10 but not gamma interferon. Many of these are
11 regulatable by growth factors that one commonly
12 finds in wound healing settings.

13 Just one final historical kind of slide.
14 Additional evidence of the role of fibrocytes in
15 antigen presentation in vivo was obtained by
16 immunohistochemical staining of human cutaneous scar
17 specimens. Now these cutaneous, human cutaneous
18 scar specimens were examined in the presence of --
19 we examined for the co-expression of either CD-34
20 and HLADR and DR was expressed with alkaline
21 phosphatase and is shown as red and CD-34 is brown
22 and granular. But you can see these co-expression
23 not as clearly here as under the microscope, but
24 there's clearly a number of cells, spindle shape

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 morphology that express both markers in cutaneous
2 scar tissue.

3 This is a higher magnification of one
4 such cell showing, in fact, cytoplasmic projections
5 of
6 CD-34.

7 So one other -- throughout the talk I'll
8 kind of try and differentiate fibrocytes from
9 dendritic cells. I think the phenotype is one
10 aspect. The flow cytometric phenotype is one
11 aspect. The morphological phenotype is another.
12 These are attached cells. They're spindle shaped
13 cells typically, but also interestingly they also
14 will proliferate in culture. This is work done at
15 the Picower Institute showing that they have about a
16 48 hour, in this case, doubling time.

17 Our clinical studies have shown that the
18 proliferation is probably for the most part, the
19 most donors, somewhat more extended than 48 hour
20 doubling time, but they do appear to proliferate.
21 In fact, you very frequently can find in cultures at
22 later stage cultures, 18, 21 and 25, these
23 proliferating foci or parent proliferating foci
24 cells of adherent cells in the cultures.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 This is just another shot of cells
2 generated from patients showing the long spindle
3 formation.

4 Okay, so in terms of clinical
5 applications, cytokine networks was interested in at
6 least initiating a pilot Phase 1. The idea here is
7 to look for these isolating cultures of fibrocytes
8 which I'll describe our process in a moment, and our
9 process for antigen presentation and of course, re-
10 vaccinate. The issue of antigen
11 presentation, I put this in as kind of a reminder to
12 also differentiate fibrocytes from dendritic cells.
13 This is infection of, on the top, dendritic cells or
14 fibrocytes with either a macrotrophic, but also, not
15 shown here,
16 T-trophic HIV virus. This is work done at the
17 Picower Institute showing infection of dendritic
18 cells and lack of infection with fibrocytes. These
19 data and others have led to an AIDS initiation grant
20 by Nancy Haywood who is the PI at Seattle Biomedical
21 Research Institute, using fibrocytes as a means to
22 generating immune response against HIV in macaques
23 at the present time.

24 We were interested in oncology and as
25 has been mentioned earlier, there are a number of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 ways to prime APCs for specific antigens, one of
2 which is peptide pulsing. This is FITC-dextran
3 uptake of various sizes, I'm sorry you can't see it
4 very well, 3,000, 4,000 and 500,000 molecular
5 weight. The right panel is fibrocytes. The left
6 panel is the control cell THP-1. And you can see
7 relatively quickly within about an hour, there's
8 significant uptake of these FITC-dextran labeled
9 cell beads by the fibrocytes. So they're highly
10 phagocytic and potentially could be utilized in a
11 peptide pulsing type of antigen loading.

12 This is work by Drs. Jhong and Kufe at
13 Dana-Farber, who used a biorad, ballistic gene gun
14 using DF-3 MUC-1 CDNA on fibrocytes with psv-MUC-1
15 expression. The top is immunohistic chemical
16 staining of MUC-1 expressing cells in a mock
17 transfection, fibrocytes in a mock transfection and
18 those shown lower are those expressing MUC-1 48
19 hours after gene gun delivery. You can see a very
20 surprising and potent high level expression, both in
21 terms of amount of protein expressed per cell as
22 well as the overall percent of cells expressing MUC-
23 1. So I think this could also be an interesting
24 application for antigen loading of fibrocytes and
25 this is also, I think, for those of you who have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 tried transfection methods in dendritic cells
2 further elaborates differences between fibrocytes
3 and dendritic cells.

4 We chose as the initial pilot Phase 1 to
5 work with Jim Mulé's technology of tumor cell lysate
6 pulsing. This is work he'll describe in detail
7 tomorrow, but just some of the salient advantages of
8 such an approach. It has a greater potential for
9 augmenting broad T-cell responses to tumor
10 associated antigens, plus potential for escape.
11 Greater potentials that trigger T-cell reactivity to
12 rejection antigens. There's evidence that both
13 helper and
14 CTL- defined epitopes have increased presentation.
15 You can circumvent the need for fresh viable tumor
16 cells in this type of approach, and of course, you
17 need for molecular characterization of the antigen.

18 As I mentioned earlier, it's extremely
19 difficult to isolate fibrocytes from mice. Multiple
20 cardiac punctures are required in many, many animals
21 to get reasonable numbers to use for vaccination,
22 but this is one such experiment in tumor model of
23 MCA-207, fibrosarcoma, a nonimmunogenic model. We
24 have similar data. We've done this multiple times
25 and also with D5 B16 melanoma, similar data. This

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 is a challenge experiment where the animals are
2 pulsed, are vaccinated three times on weekly cycles
3 prior to challenge with tumor and you can see that
4 those animals are pulsed with, are vaccinated with
5 lysate-pulsed tumor, show a decreased response rate.
6 The reason this is coming down is actually the
7 tumors are fairly necrotic with time, get
8 increasingly necrotic with time. So the Phase 1
9 clinical trial at the University of Michigan that is
10 on-going now with Dr. Chang and Dr. Mulé is the dose
11 escalation up to 10^8 cells every two weeks for up to
12 three vaccinations. The cell processing involves
13 apheresis and the cells are pulsed for 24 hours with
14 autologous tumor lysate and we co-administer KLH as
15 a surrogate. Patient inclusion, as shown here, a
16 variety of advance stage tumors. Primary end point
17 is toxicity, but of course, we really have our eye
18 on the secondary endpoints which a variety of immune
19 responses including DTH, both to KLH and autologous
20 tumor,
21 T-cell subsets, both in peripheral blood and lymph
22 nodes and a variety of T-cell assays.

23 The method of isolation is very fairly
24 straight forward. It involves isolation of the
25 whole blood Ficoll-Hypaque plate onto fibronectin

S A G CORP.

1 coated plates, washed with media 24 hours later and
2 basically go for 21 days on these fibronectin coated
3 plates. We've optimized the media. It's OPTI-MEM.
4 We're still using -- now we're using 10 percent
5 human AB serum. We have not converted this to
6 serum-free media yet.

7 In addition, well then at 21 days, the
8 cells are pulsed for 24 hours with irradiated tumor
9 lysate and then injected into the patients. The
10 yields are typically 2 to 7 percent, i.e., in cancer
11 patients. And I also mention that there are no
12 cytokines or growth factors required in this process
13 as shown now.

14 Just two slides showing just preliminary
15 data. This is allogeneic. In antigen-specific
16 tetanus toxin MOR activity in fibrocytes isolated
17 from one cancer patient, you can see there's
18 reasonable activity using APCs as -- or MLRs, a
19 surrogate assay. Now unlike the previous talk, we
20 had to have 21 days, so the cells are actually
21 processed in University of Michigan and sent to a
22 facility in San Francisco where we perform MLRs, one
23 such surrogate assay. FACS analysis is another.
24 This includes positive Class 2 86 and Collagen 1
25 staining with CD-14 exclusion. This is just a panel

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of allogeneic MLR for the cancer patients. You can
2 see reasonable stimulation for the patients as a
3 surrogate. And of course, we check for KLH
4 responses in vitro and even after two
5 re-stimulations there is significant activity to KLH
6 by the fibrocytes, so they can certainly display KLH
7 and present KLH.

8 This is a 10,000 square foot class --
9 well, cell processing facility in south San
10 Francisco. It has a variety of cluster units,
11 including three cluster at Class 10,000 clean rooms
12 and four other clean rooms that are also Class
13 10,000.

14 Since the fibrocytes at present are an
15 open system, we culture single patients in each of,
16 right now about 35 incubators.

17 So in conclusion, I just hope I've given
18 you kind of an overview, historically and
19 scientifically, of the fibrocyte, both mouse and
20 human fibrocytes express surface components required
21 for antigen presentation. They induce strong
22 allogeneic and antigen specific T-cell
23 proliferation. Some applications that may be useful
24 clinically, they're easily transfected. They
25 rapidly take up and phagocytose peptides and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 proteins. They can prime naive T-cells and they're
2 sufficient to inhibit tumor challenge to a variety
3 of models and this has led to initiation of a Phase
4 1 clinical trial pilot at University of Michigan.

5 I'd like to just acknowledge two key
6 collaborators at Picower Institute, Rick Bucola and
7 Jason Chesney, Jim Eulay and Bruce Redman at
8 University of Michigan and Dr. Clersa Nasker who is
9 part of the audience today. I'd like to especially
10 note her contributions to this clinical trial.

11 Thank you.

12 (Applause.)

13 DR. STEINMAN: Thanks, Glenn. Our next
14 speaker is scheduled to be Malcolm Mitchell, but
15 none of us have seen Malcolm. Is Dr. Mitchell here?
16 Okay, in that case we're going to take an early
17 break and start back again at 2:45. Please, no
18 later.

19 (Off the record.)

20 DR. MULÉ: It's a pleasure to
21 introduce Dr. Donald Kufe from the Dana-Farber and
22 he will be speaking today on dendritic cell tumor
23 cell fusions and presenting some recent data both
24 preclinically and more importantly in the realm of
25 human tumors in preparation for a clinical trial.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Dr. Kufe?

2 DR. KUFEE: Good afternoon. Dendritic
3 cells pulsed with peptides and proteins derived from
4 tumor antigens, as we've heard today, induce potent
5 specific anti-tumor immunity. In the absence of an
6 identifiable tumor antigen which is the case in most
7 human tumors, dendritic cells have been pulsed with
8 tumor cell membranes, LU-8s from tumor cells and as
9 we heard about this morning, apoptotic bodies.

10 We've explored a different approach
11 using dendritic cell-based vaccines by fusing
12 dendritic cells with tumor cells and thereby forming
13 heterokaryons that express tumor-associated antigens
14 as well as the machinery needed for the activation
15 of T-cells.

16 Using this strategy, expression of
17 tumor-associated antigens as well as yet
18 unidentified tumor antigens are processed
19 endogenously and expressed by MHC Class 1 in the
20 context of
21 co-stimulatory molecules.

22 We developed this approach to induce
23 active specific immunotherapy against an antigen
24 that we identified, we and others identified in the
25 early 1980s. This antigen is known as MUC-1 or

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 mucine 1. It's a human carcinoma-associated antigen
2 and as background this antigen is over expressed
3 about 30 to 50 fold compared to normal secretory
4 epithelium in the majority of breast carcinomas, as
5 well as carcinomas derived from diverse other
6 tissues.

7 Moreover, in carcinomas, MUC-1 exhibits
8 an altered cell distribution and aberrant
9 glycosylation patterns. For example, in this
10 section of an infiltrating ductile carcinoma stained
11 with immunoperoxidase, MUC-1 antigen expression is
12 at high levels throughout the transformed epithelium
13 compared to the minimal expression seen here along
14 the apical borders of the cells lining the ducts and
15 in these cells MUC-1 antigen is expressed only along
16 that portion of the cell that lines the duct whereas
17 in the transformed cells, MUC-1 antigen is expressed
18 throughout the cytoplasm and on the entire cell
19 surface.

20 As a result of cloning the MUC-1 gene by
21 my group and by others in the late 1980s, the
22 structure of the antigen is shown schematically
23 here. There's a cytoplasmic tail involved in
24 intracellular signalling, a transmembrane domain and
25 an extra cellular domain that consists of highly

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 conserved 20 amino acid tandem repeats that range in
2 number from 50 up to 100. These tandem repeats are
3 heavily glycosylated, such that the antigen extends
4 beyond the glycocalyx as a rigid rod-like structure.

5 Now interest in MUC-1 as a target for
6 active specific immunotherapy is obtained in part
7 from the over expression of this antigen in diverse
8 carcinomas, but also the finding that MUC-1 is
9 recognized by antibody and CTL responses in patients
10 with breast cancer as well as other types of
11 carcinomas and even in healthy multiparous donors.

12 Now in cancer patients, the finding that
13 MUC-1 is recognized by CTLs indicates that the
14 antigen can be recognized by the immune system, but
15 the response is insufficient to clinically alter the
16 course of the disease. Consequently, the
17 hypothesis has been that one could increase the
18 response, immune response against MUC-1 and thereby
19 induce clinically active immunity.

20 So to induce active specific
21 immunotherapy against MUC-1, we developed an
22 approach involving the fusion of MUC-1 positive
23 tumor cells with dendritic cells such that the
24 heterokaryon that forms expresses MUC-1 as well as
25 other yet unidentified tumor antigens in the context

S A G CORP.

1 of Class 1 as well as Class 2. The heterokaryons
2 also express co-stimulatory molecules and adhesion
3 molecules necessary for the activation of naive T-
4 cells and thereby the induction of cytolytic T-
5 cells.

6 The efficiency of the fusion cell
7 procedure can be demonstrated using bi-directional
8 flow cytometry, in this case using a FITC-labelled
9 antibody against MUC-1 and a PE-labelled antibody
10 against MHC-2. The dendritic cells express Class 2,
11 but no detectable MUC-1 antigen. The carcinoma
12 cells in this mouse model stably expressing the MUC-
13 1 gene, expressed MUC-1 antigen but no Class 2. If
14 we add -- mix the dendritic cells with the MC-38
15 MUC-1 carcinoma cells, and incubate for six days,
16 the cell populations remain distinct. That is, one
17 population, the dendritic cells expressing MHC Class
18 2 and the tumor cells expressing MUC-1.

19 However, if we briefly expose these
20 cells to polyethylene glycol and induce a fusion,
21 after two days of incubation the fusion cells
22 express a small percentage of cells that have both
23 Class 2 as well as MUC-1. By six days over 20
24 percent of the cells expressed both antigens and by

S A G CORP.

1 10 days, 50 percent or more of the cells expressed
2 both Class 2 and MUC-1.

3 The morphology of these cells, that is
4 the dendritic cell -- sorry, the dendritic cells
5 shown here, the carcinoma cells shown here and the
6 fusion cells are shown here. The fusion cells
7 retain some of the characteristics of the dendritic
8 cells with dendrite-like extensions. The fusion
9 cells also express other antigens common to the
10 dendritic cell. For example, in addition to Class 2
11 as seen on the fusion cells, not expressed on the
12 tumor cells, the fusion cells also express B7-1, B7-
13 2 and ICAM-1. So these cells then express
14 both the tumor associated antigen, as well as
15 molecules necessary for presentation of antigen, co-
16 stimulation and adhesion.

17 Now Jianlin Gong in our laboratory
18 showed last year that one could immunize mice with
19 fusion cells and induce anti-MUC-1 immunity as
20 evidenced by the production of antibodies, as well
21 as CTLs that were specific for MUC-1. Moreover,
22 immunization with the fusion cells prevented the
23 growth of tumors in challenge experiments, but more
24 importantly, these fusion cells were effective in

S A G CORP.

1 eliminating established pulmonary metastases of the
2 MC-38 MUC-1 carcinoma cells.

3 Now in more recent studies, we've turned
4 to a transgenic mouse model which expresses the MUC-
5 1 antigen. It expresses human MUC-1 in a pattern,
6 tissue pattern that's identical to that scene in
7 man. Moreover, as I showed you earlier in the human
8 breast epithelium, in the transgenic mouse model,
9 MUC-1 is expressed along the apical borders of the
10 cells lining ducts, in this case, bronchioles and in
11 this case mammary ductules. There's a fine rim of
12 staining along the apical borders of these cells,
13 staining specific for human MUC-1 antigen as
14 confirmed by peptide blocking.

15 So this animal model, this transgenic
16 mouse model provides an opportunity to assess the
17 immunity induced by fusion cells or other approaches
18 and indeed the MUC-1 transgenic mice are
19 immunologically unresponsive to challenge with
20 purified MUC-1 antigen mixed with adjuvant or to
21 challenge with irradiated MUC-1 positive tumor
22 cells. So we use this model to
23 determine whether the fusion cells could reverse
24 immunologic unresponsiveness to MUC-1 in these
25 animals.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now we use a tumor model where MC-38
2 carcinoma cells expressing MUC-1 are injected in the
3 tail vein of these MUC-1 transgenic mice. Multiple
4 pulmonary metastases are established and grow
5 progressively and ultimately kill these animals.
6 If, however, we establish these preliminary
7 metastases and within seven days treat with the
8 fusion cells, all of the animals as shown here of 10
9 lungs from animals with previously established
10 pulmonary lesions, all of these animals are rendered
11 disease-free and these animals are long-term
12 survivors.

13 Importantly, this irradiation of MUC-1
14 positive tumor cells is associated with an antibody
15 response that's specific to MUC-1 and a CTL
16 response. Now as I pointed out earlier, these
17 animals express MUC-1 on normal tissues, on the
18 apical borders of secretory epithelial and a key
19 question was whether the induction of anti-MUC-1
20 immunity using these fusion cells contributed to
21 autoimmunity. Indeed, the animals lived a normal
22 lifespan without evidence of disease and analysis of
23 MUC-1 positive tissues, for example, here in the
24 bronchi where we see MUC-1 staining along the apical
25 borders lining the bronchi, we see in the animals

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that were rendered disease-free with the fusion
2 cells a similar pattern of expression, so the
3 antigen remains expressed. There's no destruction
4 of the epithelium. Moreover, there was no evidence
5 for infiltration of these tissues with CTLs.

6 So we can summarize our findings with
7 this slide, using the fusion cell vaccine. We
8 induce
9 anti-MUC-1 immunity as evidenced by specific CTL and
10 anti-body responses. We induce anti-tumor activity
11 that's directed against MUC-1 and there's no
12 evidence for autoimmunity.

13 Now I should point out that this
14 induction of anti-MUC-1 immunity is only in part
15 responsible for the irradiation of the tumor cells
16 in that one can fuse MUC-1 negative cancer cells MC-
17 38 cells with dendritic cells and use that as a
18 vaccine and eliminate MC-38 MUC-1 negative pulmonary
19 metastases. So as I pointed out earlier, the fusion
20 cell vaccine offers the advantage of inducing
21 immunity against known tumor antigens, in this case,
22 MUC-1, as well as yet unidentified tumor antigens.

23 Well, since the original paper published
24 by Jianlin Gong in 1997 using the MC-38 carcinoma
25 model, several other reports have appeared using the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fusion cell approach, one with a mastocytoma,
2 another paper using B-16 melanoma and Lewis lung
3 carcinoma and then the third paper using B-16 and a
4 lymphoma that's defective in the presentation of
5 peptide antigens.

6 Now one point should be made. First of
7 all, in each of these studies the fusion cell
8 vaccine was effective in eliminating established
9 tumors. An additional point, in this particular
10 paper, the incubation of B-16 melanoma cells with
11 dendritic cells, without actually fusing the cells
12 with polyethylene glycol was sufficient to confer
13 upon the dendritic cells the induction of antigen
14 specific immunity.

15 As I showed you earlier, in our studies
16 where we mix dendritic cells and MC-38 carcinoma
17 cells, we were not able to achieve a fusion of the
18 cell membrane without a first incubation with
19 polyethylene glycol. So it may be possible to just
20 co-incubate and as we saw earlier today, co-
21 incubation where uptake of apoptotic bodies is in
22 part sufficient to induce immunity. In certain
23 settings, particularly MC-38 and some of these other
24 tumor models, one has to take it further by actually
25 fusing the cell membranes together.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Well, these findings have suggested that
2 the fusion cell approach is applicable in diverse
3 types of tumors, carcinomas, melanomas and lymphomas
4 and to determine then whether this approach is
5 potentially applicable to human dendritic cells and
6 human tumors, we pursue fusion using human breast
7 cancer cells. In fact, most of our efforts thus far
8 have been focused on breast cancer cell fusion from
9 the breast cancer cells that have been derived from
10 primary as well as metastatic lesions, they're shown
11 here. These are the human peripheral blood
12 dendritic cells that you've heard about as cultured
13 in GMCSF and IL-4. And here are the fusion cells.
14 Here, we're standing with an antibody against MUC-1.
15 The tumor cells exhibit that pattern of high levels
16 of MUC-1 expression throughout the cytoplasm and on
17 the cell membrane and likewise the fusion cells also
18 express MUC-1 throughout the cytoplasm on the cell
19 membrane. The dendritic cells are MUC-1 negative.

20 Now early in the fusion process, shortly
21 after exposure of the dendritic cells and this is an
22 autologous system now where we're using a patient's
23 own dendritic cells and her own tumor cells, you
24 find these clusters that consist of MUC-1 positive
25 cells and the MUC-1 negative dendritic cells and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 then these cells progress to further fusions where
2 we see here a fused cell that now is stained from
3 MUC-1 which is the reddish color you see here, as
4 well as Class 2, the bluish stain showing that now
5 the tumor cells which were originally Class 2
6 negative, MUC-1 positive, and the dendritic cells
7 which were MUC-1 negative and Class 2 positive, now
8 the fusion cell expresses both of these antigens.

9 Now one of the questions, of course, is
10 whether these autologous fusion cells, human DCs and
11 human breast cancer cells fused together are
12 functional, so in allogeneic MOR assays, we
13 incubated dendritic cells, tumor cells and the
14 fusion cells with allogeneic T-cells and as shown
15 here the stimulation with dendritic cells, but not
16 with the tumor cells and the fusion cells are also
17 capable of stimulating the MLR reaction.

18 This is another preparation, again
19 autologous dendritic cells with autologous breast
20 cancer cells. The dendritic cells, the tumor cells,
21 here are the fusion cells shown with the close
22 squares stimulating T-cell proliferation. Moreover,
23 one can irradiate these cells with lethal doses of
24 ionizing radiation and the infusion cells remain
25 active in stimulating MLR.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 In other studies we've asked whether the
2 fusion cells were capable of stimulating autologous
3 T-cells and we performed this type of experiment
4 where autologous T-cells are incubated with the
5 patient's tumor or with autologous fusion cells
6 derived from that patient. There's little evidence
7 of clustering between the autologous T-cells and the
8 tumor cells, but with the fusion cells we see these
9 clear clusters of autologous T-cells surrounding the
10 clumps of fusion cells and the autologous T-cells
11 begin to proliferate. We've isolated the T-
12 cells incubated with tumor cells and the T-cells
13 incubated with fusion cells by nylon wool and then
14 we've asked whether these T-cells can kill
15 autologous tumor and as shown here in three separate
16 instances of autologous fusion cells stimulating T-
17 cells, the three different patients, the T-cells
18 incubated with the fusion cells kill autologous
19 tumor cell targets, but T-cells incubated with the
20 tumor cells do not kill the autologous targets.
21 This is a chromium release assay.

22 Moreover, we've used monocytes derived
23 from the same patients as controls and the
24 stimulated T-cells do not kill the autologous
25 monocytes. Now we have not elucidated the nature of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 this killing, what the antigens are, whether it's
2 directed against MUC-1 or yet other antigens,
3 whether it's MHC restricted or unrestricted and
4 those studies are underway, but the preliminary
5 evidence suggest that we can stimulate autologous T-
6 cells using the fusion cells.

7 So in terms of characterizing the
8 dendritic cells and the breast cancer cells and as
9 well the fusion cells, in terms of identity testing,
10 we're assaying our dendritic cells for CD-83, Class
11 2, B-71, B-72. We also analyze our breast cancer
12 cells for these antigens as well as MUC-1 and
13 cytokeratin. We characterize the fusion cells by
14 doing bi-directional flow cytometry for CD-83, Class
15 2, co-stimulatory molecules, MUC-1 and when MUC-1 is
16 negative, cytokeratin. And as I've shown you we've
17 been testing these fusion cells and functional assay
18 allogeneic MLR as well as CTL activities.

19 So we believe that we're in a position
20 now to consider applying this to the clinical
21 setting where we harvest the patient's on dendritic
22 cells and fuse those dendritic cells to autologous
23 tumor cells as a potential vaccine.

24 So to summarize then, we have made
25 dendritic tumor cell fusions. We've tested this in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 mouse models and have demonstrated that we can
2 induce anti-MUC-1 immunity and we can induce
3 immunity against unidentified tumor antigens and
4 this has been confirmed by several other groups now
5 in other tumor models and we have just begun to
6 pursue this approach at least technically in breast
7 cancer, using an autologous system.

8 I'd like to identify and recognize the
9 credit for all of this work on the fusion cell
10 vaccines, Jianlin Gong and David Avigan have been
11 working collaboratively in the animal models and on
12 the development on the human vaccine as well. I'll
13 stop here.

14 Thank you.

15 (Applause.)

16 DR. MULÉ: Thanks, Don. It's a great
17 pleasure for me to introduce Dr. Mike Lotze from the
18 University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute. Mike, as
19 many of you know, has been a pioneer and driving
20 force behind many of the immunotherapy trials in
21 patients and Mike today will give us an overview of
22 the use of dendritic cells in the treatment of
23 cancer.

24 DR. LOTZE: Well, good afternoon. When
25 I saw the title for my presentation in the schedule

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that was sent out, it was clear that the organizers
2 wanted me to focus on issues related to flt3L and so
3 I'm going to spend a good portion of my time talking
4 about the use of what we call FL in the murine tumor
5 models as well as in human clinical trials. Then
6 perhaps end with some aspects of feeding apoptotic
7 bodies and apoptotic cells to DC, an area of current
8 interest in many labs.

9 So I'd like to begin with just a brief
10 review of the flt3 receptor and the flt3L. Flt3 was
11 originally identified by a number of different
12 groups as a tyrosine, kinase signalling type
13 receptor that came out of a fetal liver. It
14 represents one of a series of different receptor
15 tyrosine kinases. It, along with KIT and the PDGF
16 receptor represent members of the receptor tyrosine
17 kinase Class 3. Other extended members of this
18 family include the insulin receptor, the FGF
19 receptor, FLT2 receptor and the HER-2-NEU (sic.)
20 receptor.

21 There was a big search since it was
22 found that the flt3 molecules expressed apparently
23 uniquely on hematopoietic progenitors for the
24 ligand. The ligand was identified by two groups in
25 the period between 1993 and 1995. Flt3L was

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 subsequently demonstrated to have profound
2 hematopoietic effects as a legitimate stem cell
3 factor, and furthermore, it appeared that it
4 profoundly synergized with a variety of other
5 hematopoietic factors to enhance survival,
6 proliferation, differentiation and self-renewal.

7 And so subsequent studies done, as I'll
8 review in a minute primarily by Eugene Maraskovsky at
9 Immunex demonstrated that it also had a profound
10 effect on the ability to expand cells of both
11 lymphoid and myeloid DC phenotype. And so this
12 allows me the opportunity to just say as an aside
13 that there are two predominant approaches to using
14 DCs as therapies. One, and the one which has
15 consumed a number of individuals in this audience,
16 including our own group is to try and find what is
17 the best way to get tumor antigen into dendritic
18 cells using a variety of different protocols,
19 including the ones we just heard about from Don
20 Keefe. But in addition, an alternative strategy is
21 to try and find ways to enhance DC delivery directly
22 into tumors. And there seem to be a number of ways
23 that one might be able to do that. This would
24 include either administration of GM-CSF, pegolated

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 GMCSF, the administration of flt3L or perhaps even
2 the direct injection of DCs into tumor.

3 And so Eugene a number of years ago
4 demonstrated at Immunex that flt3 administration
5 induces the accumulation of DCs in a variety of
6 different organs, in the spleen, liver, bone marrow,
7 etcetera. This is widespread. As many as 25
8 percent of the cells in the spleen have a DC
9 phenotype. This is the appearance of a normal mouse
10 spleen. This is the appearance of two spleens from
11 animals treated with flt3L, a mouse treated with IL-
12 12 and an animal with both cytokines.

13 The appearance of the spleen is
14 remarkable. In normal animals, the apparent white
15 pulp now being expanded by these large numbers of
16 pale cells which represent phenotypically dendritic
17 cells after 10 days of administration of exogenous
18 flt3L.

19 One can also take advantage of this to
20 use ways of separating DCs directly from either the
21 peripheral blood or the spleen. This is just an
22 example of this approach using DCs labeled with
23 microbeads and then separated using magnets
24 essentially to separate out DCs which bear
25 individual phenotypic markers. We have done this as

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 a strategy to try and isolate the DC-8 alpha
2 positive lymphoid dendritic cell from nude animals
3 that failed to have CD8 positive T-cells as a way of
4 enriching cells of lymphoid DC phenotype. And one
5 can demonstrate that one can, using these
6 strategies, generate a very pure population of
7 lymphoid dendritic cells from the spleens of FL
8 treated animals.

9 In addition, as has been previously
10 shown with cells isolated from the thymus of animals
11 in Ken Shortman's experiments, one can demonstrate
12 that these lymphoid dendritic cells separated from
13 the spleens of flt3L treated nude mice are also not
14 very good stimulators in the next lymphocyte
15 response, demonstrating again their different
16 biologic activities from their nominal myeloid
17 dendritic cell brethren.

18 We've done extensive studies evaluating
19 the role of FL and murine models. I'll just briefly
20 talk about one using FL by itself and in combination
21 with IL-12 where animals are injected sequentially
22 for 10 days with one or both cytokines and then a
23 variety of studies done on peripheral lymphoid
24 organs and then also phenotypic and functional
25 studies done to evaluate the role of FL. As is well

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 known to, again many people in this audience, Fl
2 administration allows the generation of an
3 extraordinary number of dendritic cells. Here you
4 can see there's about a 200 to 300 fold increase in
5 the number of DCs that are available from the spleen
6 compared to the number of DCs you get from a flt3L-
7 treated animal to a normal animal, similar
8 increases, although not as profound occur in DCs
9 derived from the bone marrow, again a
10 flt3L-treated animal versus an animal treated with
11 HCC.

12 One can also show that these cells
13 obtained from either the bone marrow or the spleen
14 are functional. Here you can see that there's about
15 a 30 to 40 fold increase in the ability to stimulate
16 when cells are derived from the spleen of a flt3L-
17 treated animal compared to a HCC-treated animal.

18 And in addition to their ability to
19 enhance cells within the spleen, it also appears
20 that flt3L will drive cells in a variety of
21 different tissues. As I mentioned before, I'll just
22 show you one in the skin studies done by Clements
23 Esche and Michael Shurin in our group, demonstrating
24 that if you treat animals in this instance wild type
25 animals versus IL-12 knock-out animals, that one can

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 demonstrate a limited number of dendritic cells
2 presumably Langerhans cells in the dermis, I'm
3 sorry, in the epidermis of the mouse skin. If you
4 treat with flt3L, you can see a marked accumulation
5 primarily of the so-called dermal dendritic cells,
6 primarily within the dermis of animals with less
7 increase in the epidermis. There appears to be
8 somewhat increased number of cells in the epidermis
9 relative to the dermis when you treat with IL-12 and
10 a modest additive effect in some animals when
11 treated with both. This is actually summarized here
12 in wild type mice comparing it to IL-12 knock-out
13 mice and one can demonstrate again an increase in
14 the number of dermal and epidermal dendritic cells
15 as indicated by CD-86 positive cells with treatment
16 with flt3L. If you treat with a combination one can
17 demonstrate increases in both the epidermis and
18 dermis and interestingly in the absence of IL-12 or
19 even with exogenous IL-12, it appears that this
20 ability of FL to drive DC accumulation appears to be
21 abrogated, suggesting that IL-12 is necessary for
22 this FL effect.

23 Now what about the use of FL as an
24 anti-tumor reagent? This was again originally
25 identified in functional assays in murine tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 models by David Lynch at Immunex in a paper
2 published in Nature Medicine in June of 1997 showing
3 that animals treated with flt3L between Day 7 and 10
4 after tumor inoculation could reject established
5 tumors. This was subsequently confirmed in a breast
6 cancer model as well in our own group by Clements in
7 a melanoma lymphoma model published in Cancer
8 Research and a liver metastasis model demonstrating
9 the important role of NK cells which just appeared
10 in the current issue of Journal of Immunology.

11 This is the appearance of a spleen
12 again, this time stained with NLDC 145 in animals
13 treated with flt3L compared to an untreated animal
14 showing again the massive expansion of dendritic
15 cells in the spleen. One can also demonstrate this
16 within a variety of different tumors. This is the
17 MC-38 carcinoma showing again after flt3L, a massive
18 expansion of cells within this tumor, as well as the
19 C-3 sarcoma showing again relatively minimal number
20 of DCs in control animals and following flt3L an
21 enhanced number of DCs found within the C-3 sarcoma
22 with FL therapy.

23 One of the questions that has been
24 raised repeatedly is whether there might be
25 alternative strategies to elicit an immune response

S A G CORP.

1 to tumor. This would perhaps include, rather than
2 the ex vivo culture of tumor or of dendritic cells
3 with GMCSF and IL-4, the in vivo administration.
4 We've done a limited number of studies. I'll just
5 show you one where we've directly compared the ex
6 vivo administration of IL-12 and 53 Ligand with
7 various combinations of GMCSF and IL-4 that were
8 made available from Schering-Plough. Here you can
9 see in the C-3 sarcoma these are each line is a
10 separate animal, tumors growing progressively and if
11 you administer IL-12 at a microgram per day
12 beginning on Day 7 one can demonstrate a complete
13 elimination of tumor. Similarly, one can
14 demonstrate that with flt3L, these animals are
15 immune to a subsequent challenge with tumor, with
16 modest, but not absent effects, of GMCSF, IL-4 or
17 the various combinations. You can see in this very
18 sensitive tumor model that there does appear to be
19 some anti-tumor effects, but the best anti-tumor
20 effects are again those mediated by simple
21 administration of IL-12 or flt3L.

22 I'd like to briefly review some of the
23 studies done in the clinical arena. These slides
24 were made available to me by Donna Caron and Mal
25 Lepsik, representing the results of the flt3L Phase

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 study which is a randomized double blind study
utilizing daily sub cu. injections for a maximum of
14 days with escalating doses of 5-3 Ligand as well
as in some groups GCSF, given 10 micrograms per
kilogram per day, as well as a placebo controlled
group.

The administration of flt3L to humans
was associated with very modest toxicity, only grade
1 or 2 in severity. Primarily, injection site
reactions, as well as an occasionally painful and
enlarged lymph nodes, that were in our experience
spleen, but all of these resolved without serious
sequelae and there appears to be little in the way
of adverse events associated with the simple
administration of FL.

Like the murine models, there appears to
be enhanced numbers of dendritic cells. These
include not just the CD-11 C positive, but as I'll
show you later, CD-11 C negative dendritic cells
presumably representing the lymphoid dendritic cell
subset in the human. In addition, there appears to
be an overall expansion of myeloid cells and cells
that appear like these large macrophages that
Jacques showed you earlier.

S A G CORP.

1 So if you examine administration of
2 flt3L here over 14 days, here in three separate
3 individuals, you can see on a logarithmic scale that
4 there is an increase in the number of dendritic
5 cells which peaks around Day 10 to 14 and levels
6 off. These cells that increase as a percentage of
7 cells in the peripheral blood, you can see upwards
8 of a 10 to 50 fold increase in the total number of
9 dendritic cells in the peripheral blood. This is
10 with an N of 15 compared to a placebo controlled
11 group. Similarly, if you look at the absolute
12 number of dendritic cells, here you can see again,
13 again this is on a logarithmic about a 50 fold
14 increase in the number of dendritic cells in the
15 peripheral blood of patients receiving exogenous
16 flt3L.

17 What are these cells and what are their
18 functional capabilities? If you sort on the CD-11C
19 positive CD-14 negative cells one can demonstrate
20 that these cells not only have an enhanceability to
21 stimulate in an autologous MLR shown here in terms
22 of background counts, but also have the capability
23 of presenting exogenous antigen here in this
24 instance tetanus toxoid, ovalbumin KLH and hepatitis
25 B and that these cells again appear to be the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 predominant cells capable of this activity. The CD-
2 11C positive CD-14 positive macrophages appear to
3 have far less activity, again demonstrating this
4 remarkable difference between nominal dendritic
5 cells expanded here in the instance of FL
6 administration comparing to the macrophages.

7 If you examine the phenotype here in
8 three separate individuals of these DCs, this is
9 again showing a placebo. Looking at CD-86 in the
10 abscissa and along the ordinate, a cocktail of
11 antibodies reflecting a variety of different
12 cellular subsets to try and drive them all out of
13 the lower right hand corner. You can demonstrate a
14 relatively small number here estimated as being 2.6
15 percent which is probably a high estimate, but you
16 can show that in three separate individuals you can
17 drive this percentage up to a considerable degree,
18 25 percent, 17 percent, almost 20 percent by 14 days
19 of administration of flt3L.

20 If you look at another phenotypic marker
21 in this instance using the myeloid marker CD-33
22 which is on both macrophages as well as dendritic
23 cells and here again use the same cocktail of
24 antibodies in the ordinate, one can again
25 demonstrate in a placebo treated individual about 10

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 percent in this particular individual, the cells
2 appearing to be CD-33 positive and probably CD-14
3 positive. You can demonstrate that there's an
4 increase in this cell population as well, 21
5 percent, 25 percent or 22 percent in patients
6 treated with flt3L, in addition to the increase in
7 the nominal dendritic cells. And so it appears that
8 not only are these cells increased, but also other
9 cells of myeloid origin.

10 This looks at Class 2 and this has been
11 demonstrated repeatedly at this conference. Once
12 can enhance very high expression of Class 2 as a
13 characteristic of immature and further increased on
14 mature dendritic cells and one can again demonstrate
15 a large increase over a placebo controlled
16 individual, in a phenotype or lineage negative
17 cells expressing Class 2, again nominally DCs as
18 well as an increase in these other myeloid cells
19 presumably macrophages.

20 Let's see, as I mentioned there's an
21 increase not only in the CD-11C positive DCs, but if
22 you gate on large cells one can also demonstrate
23 that there's an increase in CD-11C negative DCs.
24 Here, one can demonstrate in normal individuals as a
25 percentage, a very low number of these cells. Here,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 you can see with flt3L prior to treatment and after
2 treatment, again an expansion as a percentage and as
3 an absolute increase probably about 10 fold, less
4 expansion than the overall DC numbers associated
5 with FL administration.

6 This is the picture of one of the
7 phenotypic markers, nominally associated with
8 lymphoid dendritic cells, the IL-3 receptor or CD-
9 123 which has been defined by a number of groups as
10 being characteristic of the lymphoid DC,
11 particularly in the human. Here you can demonstrate
12 that there is a increase in the number of lymphoid
13 dendritic cells again shown as an increase in the
14 number of cells expressing the CD-123 marker.

15 If one examines these different cellular
16 subsets examining CD-14 versus CD-11C and these are
17 broken down into four different definable
18 subpopulations, those that are CD-11C positive, that
19 are CD-14 negative, those that appear to be double
20 positives and those that are weakly positive for
21 CD-11C, one can demonstrate that the ones which
22 appear to be greatest in terms of their stimulatory
23 activity include those that are CD-11C positive and
24 CD-14 negative, again confirming that this is the
25 phenotype of the most active stimulator within the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 mixed lymphocyte response, very comparable to what
2 one would see with a CD-1A positive bone marrow
3 derived dendritic cell. And that cells derived from
4 this population or this population are less
5 stimulatory in a mixed lymphocyte response.

6 We've just completed a Phase 2 study in
7 patients with melanoma. This represents a study
8 conducted at three centers, University of
9 Pittsburgh, University of Minnesota and at M.D.
10 Anderson. We are just going over the data now. I
11 cannot present the clinical results, but we'll say
12 that even in melanoma patients there does appear to
13 be an expansion of lineage negative DR positive or
14 CD-86 positive cells. Normally, in our experience
15 this represents .3 to 1 percent of the cells and you
16 can see reproducible in melanoma patients treated
17 with flt3L an increase to 6 to 10 percent of the
18 circulating cells having this phenotype, again
19 representing an expansion of dendritic cells in the
20 peripheral blood.

21 Our first patient treated with flt3L, a
22 patient with advanced melanoma at multiple sites,
23 also developed rather profound vitiligo, as well as
24 disappearance of a couple of subcutaneous lesions
25 associated with FL treatment. This is

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 characteristic finding in patients responding to a
2 variety of immunotherapies for melanoma,
3 unfortunately, ultimately progressed with CNS
4 metastasis.

5 We've also taken a group of patients and
6 treated them with subsequent high dose IL-2. In a
7 patient who had really what appeared to be stable
8 disease these after flt3L, who had multiple
9 subcutaneous and dermal and epidermal lesions here
10 shown on the face of metastatic melanoma, as well as
11 pulmonary nodules after a first cycle of IL-2 and a
12 second cycle of IL-2 has had a complete
13 disappearance of these lesions as well as the
14 pulmonary lesions, consistent with the potential
15 notion that some combination therapy designed to
16 target both dendritic cells as well as
17 T-cells might be successful in such patients.

18 Now I'd like to take just the last few
19 minutes and talk about delivery of tumor antigen
20 into dendritic cells as opposed to driving dendritic
21 cells into tumor. As was again shown from the
22 laboratories of Nina Bhardwaj and shown again today
23 by Ralph and Jacques, one can take a CD-86 positive
24 dendritic cell, add in this instance di-I cultured
25 melanoma cells and show within a few hours rapid

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 uptake into virtually all of the dendritic cells of
2 these apoptotic bodies and apoptotic cells. In this
3 instance representing serum starved melanoma cells,
4 although we've done the same thing with irradiated
5 cells, adeno P-53 transfected cells, as well as a
6 variety of other strategies designed to drive
7 apoptosis. These are studies that are relatively
8 straightforward to perform. One can, in the green,
9 express your CD-86 or DC marker and in this
10 instance, red, use to stain your tumor cells and one
11 can show a complete matchup of
12 CD-86 positive di-I positive cells, again consistent
13 with rapid uptake of apoptotic bodies and apoptotic
14 cells by these dendritic cells.

15 In addition, from our clinical trials
16 where we're actually using GCSF stimulated
17 peripheral blood, leuko phoresis-derived cells, one
18 can demonstrate in some of these patients a failure
19 to completely convert to a CD-14 negative phenotype.
20 These represent adherent cells cultured in CMCSF in
21 IL-4. You can see that there's a large number, even
22 after five days of CD-14 positive cells that are
23 also CD-86 positive. These, in our estimation,
24 represent a mixed or a middle phenotype of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 macrophages on the way to DCs, very similar to
2 what's observed in
3 CMV-infected cells. If you add, as was done in this
4 patient, his irradiated renal cell tumor, one can
5 demonstrate within a day to two days that you have
6 driven the phenotype of these cells as a
7 maturational step. Just by adding apoptotic
8 irradiated tumor, one can demonstrate further
9 maturation of these DCs just by the exogenous
10 administration of irradiated tumor again suggesting
11 that this might be a strategy to drive DC maturation
12 as well as enhance antigen uptake. And this patient
13 was treated repeatedly with this combination of
14 irradiated tumor and DC preps.

15 We've done similar studies using
16 apoptotic melanoma cells and again demonstrating
17 that a GM-CSF plus IL-4 cultured dendritic cell
18 derived from adherence cell progenitors again when
19 you add just overnight irradiated tumor here at a 10
20 to 1 DC to tumor ratio, one can demonstrate a rather
21 pronounced increase in expression of this molecule
22 CD-86.

23 Not only is one capable of doing that,
24 but one also can use these tumor-fed DCs to promote

S A G CORP.

1 multi-epitope specific CTL. Shown here, one can
2 demonstrate that one can elicit T-cells fully
3 capable using the strategy to respond to the
4 melanoma 526 as well as a number of peptide pulsed
5 A2 presented targets, again demonstrating the power
6 of using these DCs.

7 So I'd like to conclude and just thank
8 some of the individuals involved with these studies.
9 Michael Shurin and Clements Esche did many of the
10 flt3L studies and Robbie Millard and let's see, who
11 else should I pick out here?

12 (Laughter.)

13 My son who did some of the studies with
14 apoptotic bodies. I should just finish and say that
15 as many of you know, I used to be a T-cell
16 chauvinist. I've now become a DC evangelist. I ran
17 the Bordeaux marathon last September in France.
18 They actually give you wine during the race. This
19 is a picture of me at the middle of the race
20 drinking a glass of nice French wine and they make
21 you wear a costume. I went as Statue of Liberty and
22 I really did it in honor of the dendrites on the
23 crown of the --

24 (Laughter.)

25 Thank you for your attention.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MULÉ: Thanks, Mike. Our next
2 speaker is Dr. Drew Pardoll from the Johns Hopkins
3 Oncology Center and it's a pleasure for Drew to
4 share with us an overview of antigen-presenting
5 cells and antigen processing in presentation in
6 tumor immunity and tolerance to tumors.

7 DR. PARDOLL: While standing on one leg.
8 What I want to start with before talking about
9 antigen processing and presentation specifically is
10 to just sort of define the problem, at least as we
11 at Hopkins see it with regard to immunotherapy of
12 cancer.

13 May I have the first slide? So it
14 basically boils down to tolerance. And so what I
15 would propose is that the paradigm that drove much
16 of cancer immunology in the 1950s, namely the immune
17 surveillance hypothesis which postulated that one of
18 the normal roles of the immune system was to survey
19 the body for tumors through recognition of
20 neoantigens and to eliminate them based on this
21 recognition is, in fact, incorrect, and needs, in
22 fact, to be replaced with what I'll refer to as the
23 immune tolerance hypothesis which essentially states
24 that the response of the immune system to
25 neoantigens that arise in tumors is more like the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 response to self-antigens, namely, the natural
2 response is tolerance rather than activation.

3 I'll show you just an example or two
4 that this really is, in fact, the case. These are
5 some transgenic studies done by Wadar Sodomayer and
6 Hilavisky's lab in parallel with Adam Adler in my
7 lab. The idea was to look at the immune response
8 and sorry this is backwards, but it's okay.
9 Hopefully, this will be the only one.

10 But in any case, the immune response to
11 a model antigen hemagglutinin and expressed either
12 as a self-antigen in a transgenic mouse expressing
13 it off the C-3 promoter which expresses HA in the
14 prostate and other parenchymal cells or expressing
15 it as a tumor antigen on the A-20 tumor which one
16 can inject into BALB/C mice. And HA, as you know,
17 is when it comes into the body in the form of an
18 antigen on influenza is a very potent antigen and
19 immunogen and the question is what is it when it's a
20 tumor antigen or a self-antigen and the system here,
21 hard to see backwards is that one can transfer
22 limited numbers of marked T-cell receptor transgenic
23 T-cells into these animals with a transgenic T-cell
24 receptor specific for an HA peptide in this case
25 presented by MHC Class 2 molecules and then after

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 encountering the antigen in vivo in a setting where
2 they represent a small enough proportion of the
3 total T-cells, can be taken out of the animal and
4 their functional state is determined.

5 What I'll tell you without showing you
6 the data is that in all of the cases, namely HA is a
7 self-antigen, as a tumor antigen or as a viral
8 antigen, one can show by looking at activation
9 markers on these transgenic T-cells that the T-cells
10 recognized through their T-cell receptor HA peptide
11 and also they're still present after that
12 recognition.

13 In most cases they expand somewhat and
14 then they contract back down, but they're certainly
15 still present. So one can then pull them out and
16 look at their function and hope that -- good.

17 So this is one of a number of assays
18 that we used, the simplest being simply looking at
19 proliferative response to the cognate hemagglutinin
20 peptide in vitro presented by good antigen
21 presenting cells and what we're showing here is the
22 response per clonotype positive T-cell. So this is
23 really looking at the proliferative function per
24 clonotype positive T-cell. What I'll tell you is

S A G CORP.

1 that if you look at lymphokine production one sees
2 essentially the same thing.

3 So with HA as a self-antigen, what one
4 see is not unexpectedly the induction of anergy, the
5 now, probably most important form of peripheral
6 tolerance, and so when these cells circulate in HA
7 transgenic animals for one week, one loses about two
8 thirds and then after two weeks about over three
9 quarters of the responsiveness and this is the
10 classic definition of anergy when HA is expressed as
11 a parenchymal
12 self-antigen.

13 If now one looks at HA expressed on
14 tumor cells as Eduardo did, even though a 20 which
15 is a lymphoma cell that immunologists use for in
16 vitro studies for antigen presentation, nonetheless,
17 as a tumor antigen HA induces the same sort of
18 anergic tolerance as it did when it was a
19 parenchymal
20 self-antigen.

21 Compare that with the response when HA
22 is a viral antigen such as this recombinant vaccinia
23 HA here and what you see is the classic hyper
24 responsiveness of a memory response of an activated
25 cell.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So this is one of actually now a number
2 of examples emerging in the literature to
3 demonstrate that, in fact, the response of the
4 immune system to antigens expressed by tumors tends
5 to be that of tolerance. So the problem then is
6 really breaking tolerance, taking either cells that
7 have low affinity receptors and therefore are
8 ignorant of the antigen and now raising them up to a
9 state of therapeutically useful activation or
10 potentially formally breaking tolerance by taking an
11 anergic T-cell, rendered anergic, and converting it
12 to an activated cell.

13 So we have to understand this process a
14 little bit more and certainly one of the current
15 driving paradigms is the model put forward by
16 Bretcher and Cohen which is that applied to T-cells
17 in this case which is that in order for a T-cell to
18 be appropriately activated, it requires two signals,
19 signal one being engagement of the T-cell receptor
20 by the peptide MHC antigen, signal 2 being a co-
21 stimulatory signal. We now know that signal 2
22 represents a host of different co-stimulatory
23 signals. In the presence of signal 1, in the
24 absence of signal 2 the default pathway would
25 therefore be tolerance.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 What we're now learning in the case of
2 tumors as well as parenchymal self-antigens is that
3 these decision processes, the APCs in all cases seem
4 to be bone marrow-derived antigen-presenting cells.
5 So what that means is that if tolerance is being
6 induced, it's being induced because the antigen is
7 being presented not by the original cell that
8 expresses it necessarily, but rather by a tolerizing
9 bone marrow-derived antigen-presenting cell.
10 Likewise, if activation is the outcome, it's because
11 it's a different kind or state of antigen-presenting
12 cell that's providing the appropriate co-stimulatory
13 molecules or signals in addition to signal 1.

14 And so one can then look at the response
15 to tumor antigens versus antigens in a viral
16 infection, really based on what the nature of the
17 antigen-presenting cell is, the idea being that in
18 the case of a viral infection, there are
19 inflammatory or we'll use the term danger signals a
20 la Polly Massinger which we now know to really
21 involve a number of chemical species such as
22 cytokines, such as GM-CSF and TNF alpha which
23 activate antigen-presenting cells and that results
24 in the appropriate signal delivery to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 T-cells. In the case of tumor, there do not exist
2 the appropriate danger signals and so the outcome is
3 tolerant.

4 So in essence, what all of cancer
5 vaccines probably are trying to do is two things.
6 One is to deliver reasonable doses of the right
7 antigens to antigen-presenting cells and the other
8 is to create the appropriate danger signals that
9 will activate antigen-presenting cells into this
10 activation mode which we now refer to as the
11 dendritic cell.

12 In our own case, we found that a
13 vaccination approach that we had been using, namely
14 to introduce cytokine genes into tumor cells and
15 vaccinate with these cytokine gene transduced tumor
16 cells turns out probably to be an approach that
17 generates dendritic cells in vivo local to the site
18 of antigen. We didn't really know we were doing
19 this at the time of the experiments which were done
20 in collaboration with Glenn Drenoff and Rich
21 Mulligan in which we empirically looked at the
22 ability of a poorly immunogenic tumor, the B-16
23 melanoma transduced with a whole host of different
24 cytokine genes to induce protective immunity shown
25 as the ability to reject tumors up here and what

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fell out in this very empiric, totally
2 nonmechanistic study was that GMCSF transduced
3 tumors work the best and it was needless to say
4 extremely exciting and revealing to us when we were
5 seeing these sorts of results to begin to see the
6 results from Ralph Steinman's and others'
7 laboratories demonstrating the importance of GMCSF
8 in generating the differentiating signals towards
9 progenitors towards dendritic cells.

10 So the idea then with these GMCSF
11 transduced vaccines is that the transduced vaccine
12 was a depot for locally for tumor antigen as well as
13 GMCSF and in the presence of this local GMCSF, bone
14 marrow-derived progenitors were induced to
15 differentiate to antigen-presenting cells. One can
16 show with all the markers that in addition to
17 macrophages and everything else that there are
18 dendritic cell marker expressing APCs that abound
19 within the vaccine site and they eventually appear
20 in draining lymph nodes.

21 What we also were able to demonstrate
22 with model antigens in the tumor using chimeric
23 experiments, these are experiments done by Paul
24 Lumback and Alex Wong, was that when antigen is
25 taken up into these antigen-presenting cells in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 vivo, it's not only processed into the MHC Class 2
2 pathway, but also is efficiently processed into the
3 MHC Class 1 pathway, this phenomenon known as cross
4 priming. And in studies using bone marrow chimeras
5 in which bone marrow donors were mice that were
6 genetically knocked out for various molecules or
7 genes and coding molecules in the Class 1 antigen-
8 presenting pathway, it's now quite clear that this
9 cross priming pathway for the presentation of Class
10 1 antigens goes through the cytosolic pathway, so
11 that if one eliminates a tap in the bone marrow-
12 derived cells or if one eliminates LMP-2 or LMP-7
13 looking at an antigen that is LMP-2 or LMP-7
14 dependent for proteosomal processing, one loses this
15 cross priming.

16 So I think one of the very important
17 areas of investigation now for vaccine development
18 needs to be understanding exactly how it is at these
19 antigen-presenting cells cross out of -- will cross
20 antigens out of the endosomal compartment and into
21 the cytosole.

22 We thought that to further develop or
23 understand this, we needed to have an in vitro
24 system in which we could demonstrate that antigens
25 delivered to, for example, dendritic cells in vitro

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 exogenously could be crossed into the Class 1
2 pathway. And even though a number of investigators
3 such as Ken Rock have shown that really ridiculously
4 super-physiologic concentrations of antigen could
5 achieve this, it turns out to be very difficult to
6 actually see this with normal amounts of antigen,
7 but we were encouraged, certainly by Nina Bhardwaj's
8 studies demonstrating that antigens in apoptosing
9 cells could, in fact, in vitro be taken up by
10 dendritic cells and presented by MHC Class 1
11 antigens.

12 Pursuing this, one of the graduate
13 students in the lab, Jianglin Lu, using the HA
14 system and dendritic cells, followed this up further
15 and in his hands he found that when one simply adds
16 HA in the form of lysate of a tumor cell expressing
17 HA to dendritic cells and then adds CD-8 positive T-
18 cells specific for HA, there's really very little
19 activation of these cells.

20 It wasn't until he added cognate helper
21 cells to the dendritic cells shown here, so these
22 are adding helper cells specific for HA, that he
23 was, in fact, able to now at quite reasonable
24 concentrations or doses of antigens, generate this
25 in vitro cross priming with dendritic cells. It

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 could be partially replaced by simply infecting the
2 dendritic cells with a vaccinia virus indicating
3 that this infection generated some internal signals
4 which activated this cross priming pathway.

5 Interestingly, in contrast to what one
6 might have expected from some of the in vivo
7 studies, an agonist, anti-CD-40 antibody failed to
8 replace helper cells themselves in allowing this
9 cross priming to occur.

10 Just to give you an example of the
11 potency with which one can see this cross priming,
12 this is simply looking at the CD-8 response when
13 tumor lysate is diluted down towards 1 to 1,000.
14 And of course, when you do that and have CD-4s and
15 CD-8s present, what you see is this drop off, but
16 this drop off could be from a decrease in
17 presentation on the Class 1 site or the Class 2
18 site. However, one can separate the systems and add
19 simply the Class 2 peptide at the phase in which the
20 helper cells are added to the dendritic cells and
21 what you can see is that in this case the helper
22 cells sensitize the dendritic cells in a way that
23 now even very, very small amounts of antigen in the
24 form of diluted tumor lysate can still, nonetheless,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cross prime in the sense of be processed into the
2 MHC Class 1 pathway.

3 Notice here that in the absence of
4 helper cells, one does begin to see a little bit
5 when with high amounts of lysate and in fact, when
6 one concentrates the lysate further, one can show
7 that again at very large amounts of antigen one can
8 do away with helper cells. However, with the levels
9 of antigen that we think represent physiologic
10 levels, the importance of having cognate help to
11 sensitize dendritic cells we think is going to turn
12 out to be really quite crucial.

13 In fact, helper cells which had been
14 ignored completely by the cancer immunology
15 community for many decades are really undergoing a
16 revival and I just want to show you an example of
17 some studies that Ken Hung did with the GMCSF
18 transduced B-16 vaccines to demonstrate the
19 importance of helper cells in mediating a number of
20 additional effector pathways besides simply
21 activating CTL and you can demonstrate this in
22 knockout mice in which one can see that relative to
23 the protection generated in wild type mice, there
24 is, as expected a loss in protection in CD-8

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 knockout mice when one vaccinates with GMCSF
2 transduced tumors and then challenges.

3 However, there is still a reasonable
4 level of protection. Instead if one vaccinates a
5 CD-4 knockout mouse, one loses all of the
6 protection, so the difference between basically this
7 line here and this line here, represents CD-4
8 dependent anti-tumor effector mechanisms that are
9 other than CD-8. And in fact, if one simply looks
10 histologically in the challenge site of a wild type
11 animal vaccinated with

12 -- I don't know if we can focus that, vaccinated
13 with B-16 GMCSF cells, one can, in fact, see an
14 infiltrate of eosinophils that is lost in the CD-4
15 knockout mice. You'll have to take my word for it,
16 since they don't seem to be focusing this too well.

17 In CD-8 knockout mice, there's really no
18 difference.

19 So it turns out that those eosinophils
20 are a TH-2 dependent effector. In fact, there's
21 also important TH-1 dependent effector that is
22 independent of CD-8s and that turns out to be
23 macrophage-dependent INOS and what you can see here
24 is that INOS is induced quite dramatically within
25 macrophages infiltrating a tumor challenged site in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 animals vaccinated with B-16 GMCSF vaccines. Again,
2 this is completely CD-4 dependent.

3 What I won't show you is that this is a
4 TH-1 dependent phenomenon and that in INOS knockout
5 mice one loses about 50 percent of vaccination
6 potency as does one lose about 50 to 60 percent of
7 vaccination potency in GP-91 knockout mice which are
8 -- which is one of the subunits of the NADPH oxidase
9 complex responsible for superoxide generation.

10 So I'll leave this actually as -- how
11 much time do I have? I'm out. Okay.

12 (Laughter.)

13 Jim is so intimidating. So this will be
14 my last slide. So I simply want to point out here
15 and this certainly has a lot to do with issues of
16 what one assays for in attempting to determine
17 whether one's vaccine is really doing what it's
18 supposed to be doing. The point here being then that
19 through this, in our case, in vivo dendritic cell
20 generation mechanism, one generates in addition to
21 CD-8 positive CTL through helper cell sensitized
22 dendritic cells in the lymph node, an additional set
23 of effectors that is CD-4 dependent, that in fact,
24 in this particular system generates both TH-1 and
25 TH-2 effectors. The TH-1 effectors activating

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 macrophages that have picked up tumor antigen from
2 the metastatic deposit presented on Class 2 and then
3 these activated macrophages produced both nitric
4 oxide as well as superoxides and probably other
5 interesting reactive oxygen intermediates as well
6 where as the TH-2 pathway activates eosinophils
7 which turn out to degranulate and eosinophil
8 granules contain a number of very potent cytotoxic
9 molecules.

10 What I haven't shown here is antibodies,
11 although antibodies probably also support this
12 response by oxidizing tumor antigens to amplify this
13 cycle through MAC Class 2 positive cells at the site
14 of metastatic tumor.

15 So in fact, I think the take home
16 message is that with the appropriate delivery of
17 antigen and activation of antigen-presenting cells,
18 there may be a number of important immunologic
19 effectors that one needs to think about in terms of
20 being brought to bear in a synergistic fashion to
21 generate the most effective anti-tumor immunity.

22 (Applause.)

23 DR. MULÉ: Thank you. Our final speaker
24 of this session before we have our panel discussion
25 is Dr. Larry Kwak from the NCI, keeping in line with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 what Drew had introduced with respect to GMCSF.
2 We'll hear a bit more about that in Dr. Kwak's talk
3 which is recruitment of dendritic cells for tumor
4 antigen processing for T-cell recognition in vitro
5 and in vivo.

6 DR. KWAK: Actually Drew -- could I have
7 Drew's last slide? I'm going to start with that.

8 (Laughter.)

9 I think you'll find that many of the
10 observations that I'm going to share today actually
11 impact on several of the topics that are being
12 raised by this symposium, including some already
13 discussed today, as well as those tomorrow and the
14 current session on dendritic cells.

15 The studies that I'm going to share with
16 you today are focused on the study of an antigen
17 called idiootype which we have been focused on for
18 about a decade now. The concept of the -- I think
19 my pointer went dead.

20 The concept of the -- as shown on this
21 slide and it's that the immunoglobulin receptor, the
22 antigen receptor on a malignant B cell is an
23 immunoglobulin molecule. The clonal proliferation
24 of tumor cells from the neoplastic clone will be
25 unique from all other B cells in the human body in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that there will be a unique constellation of amino
2 acid sequences generated by the heavy and light
3 chain genes. This particular -- this is a slide
4 actually that was taken from a publication by George
5 and Frieda Stevenson in 1971 who were the first
6 really to propose idiotype as a tumor specific
7 antigen for B cell malignancies.

8 As shown on this slide is the spectrum
9 of normal B cell differentiation and some of the
10 malignancies, the spectrum of malignancies that
11 could be envisioned for targeting of this receptor
12 by vaccine approach, including CLL, B-cell lymphoma
13 and multiple myeloma.

14 The pre-clinical rationale, the seminal
15 experiments for this approach were actually also
16 done in the very early 1970s in the laboratory of
17 Eisen, who first demonstrated that an immunoglobulin
18 derived from a MOPC plasma cytoma could be used to
19 immunize syngeneic mice in such a way as to raise an
20 antibody response that was specific for that
21 idiotype portion or the variable region portion of
22 the immunoglobulin. These mice could subsequently
23 be protected against tumor challenge against the
24 particular tumor from which the immunoglobulin was

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 derived and that this tumor resistance was also
2 specific for the idiotype portion on the molecule.

3 Since that time, this basic phenomenon
4 of idiotype specific tumor resistance has been
5 reproduced in a number of lymphoma myeloma and
6 leukemia models and so it's on quite firm basis that
7 we stand for the clinical trials that I'm going to
8 spend the majority of my time describing to you.

9 Now the very first human clinical trial
10 was done by myself working in Ron Levey's laboratory
11 at the time in which we immunized nine patients with
12 B-cell lymphoma with immunoglobulin derived from
13 their own tumors. This was an important study, but
14 it was a pilot study, just the beginning because it
15 showed largely that one couldn't raise an antibody
16 response similar to the animal experiments of Eisen
17 several decades ago, but largely what was missing
18 were T-cell responses in these patients and this was
19 a heterogeneous group of patients and the question
20 of clinical efficacy was not to be addressed here.

21 Subsequently one established the program
22 at the NCI. We established several goals, two of
23 which are shown here for subsequent human lymphoma
24 vaccine development. The first was to make further
25 improvements in vaccine potency so that we're able

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 now to systematically assess the question of anti-
2 tumor efficacy and I'll show you how we've done that
3 in the current clinical trial, but secondly, to
4 complete the answer of immunogenicity, by focusing
5 on the generation of CD-8 positive T-cell responses.

6 This is the schema for the current
7 clinical trial. It's a single arm protocol and it
8 has several distinguishing features which I'll go
9 through briefly. The first is that because
10 vaccination is going to be -- is going to depend --
11 the success of vaccination is going to depend on the
12 ability of the host to mount an immune response in
13 this disease particularly follicular or low-grade
14 lymphoma, we felt justified in going into previously
15 untreated patients. These patients are all after a
16 lymph node biopsy to obtain starting material for
17 the vaccine, are uniformly treated with the same
18 chemotherapy regimen. The particular regimen is
19 probably not important. What is important is that
20 at the end of this chemotherapy, that one has a
21 homogenous group of patients who are in their first
22 clinical remission from their disease. After a six
23 to 12 month waiting period after chemotherapy, the
24 series of vaccinations is given with the autologous
25 idotype, derived from the patient's own tumor,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 coupled with KLH as an immunogenetic carrier and
2 then as Drew laid the groundwork for the use of
3 GMCSF, in this case, soluble GMCSF mixed with the
4 antigen and administered over a total of four days.

5 So in this first part of the talk one
6 can think of this representing a recruitment of
7 dendritic cells in vivo and those are the
8 immunologic and molecular results that I'm going to
9 share with you. But before I do that, I want to
10 make the point that in the field of cancer vaccines
11 unlike that of chemotherapy where the final question
12 is that everyone wants to get to is can this therapy
13 produce clinical benefit, we have to answer this
14 first question -- this other question first and that
15 is, is it even possible to immunize against the
16 self-tumor antigen?

17 Now in trying to answer that first
18 question of whether it's even possible to immunize
19 against the tumor antigen, we spent quite a bit of
20 time in our laboratory thinking about what the most
21 convincing level of evidence would be to show that
22 we've actually accomplished immunization.

23 These are what I've listed, these two
24 are targets that have been used traditionally for
25 measurement as targets or the T-cell response in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cases where the antigen or the peptide is known,
2 autologous antigen-presenting cells pulsed with
3 those peptides and antigens have been used. Even
4 better, when available, allogeneic tumor cell lines
5 have been used as targets. But we felt that the
6 very best level of
7 -- most convincing level of evidence would be
8 obtained by using autologous, in each case using
9 autologous tumor cells. And so all of our assays
10 have now been adapted towards the use of autologous
11 tumor cells as targets and admittedly, working with
12 hematologic malignancies, it's somewhat easier than
13 working with solid tumors, but it's a human
14 experiment that nevertheless needed to be done.

15 Twenty patients who were in complete
16 remission, first complete remission on that clinical
17 study have completed vaccination and those are the
18 results that I'm going to share with you today.
19 These are still unpublished and were the subject of
20 a plenary session presentation at the American
21 Society of Hematology just three days ago.

22 The first question of T-cell immunity to
23 this antigen has been addressed by Maurizio
24 Bendandi, who is a Fellow in the laboratory who
25 simply took PBL from immunized patients and put them

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 in culture with autologous lymphoma cells,
2 follicular lymphoma cells in each case and asked the
3 question of whether the -- after five days asked
4 which cytokines were being made in response to that
5 stimulation. And what's shown here are impressive
6 levels of TNF production. Also consistently
7 observed are GMCSF and interferon gamma and
8 basically the bottom line is that 17 out of these 20
9 patients make specific responses to their autologous
10 tumor. Now in the interest of time I'm going to
11 show you the controls that you undoubtedly are
12 asking for on the next few slides.

13 These are two representative patients
14 which show first that tumor specificity of the
15 response as shown by the lack of response of immune
16 PBMC for normal flow sorted peripheral blood B cells
17 as nonneoplastic targets. Secondly, what this
18 experiment shows is that the stimulation of this
19 response against autologous tumor can be blocked by
20 the addition of an anti-Class 1, but not by an
21 isotype control antibody or anti-Class 2.

22 When we asked the question of whether
23 these T-cells, they can make cytokines, but can they
24 actually kill the autologous tumor cell in vitro?
25 We had to do one additional manipulation and that's

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 shown on the left part of the slide in blue and that
2 is to prestimulate the stimulating tumor cells
3 through the CD-40 receptor with fibroblast cells
4 which are transfected with the CD-40 ligand. When
5 those tumor cells, prestimulated tumor cells are
6 used in the assay I just described, that is, taking
7 immune PBL, stimulated with tumor cells for five
8 days and then assayed on unmodified native tumor
9 targets the following results were obtained. In the
10 vast majority of these patients that I've shown you,
11 two representative for simplicity here, we observed
12 significant -- substantial amounts of killing of the
13 autologous tumor cells in each case that was evident
14 post-vaccination, but not pre-vaccination. As
15 controls for specificity there was lack of killing
16 on non-neoplastic normal B cells and when available,
17 EBV lymphoblastoid lines from these very same
18 patients to demonstrate the tumor specificity of
19 these T-cells.

20 The lysis of these autologous tumor
21 cells was also blocked by the addition of anti-Class
22 1 pretreatment and not by control antibodies and
23 when he fractionated out the CD-8 positive T-cells,
24 these were sufficient to mediate that level of
25 lysis. Now in terms of trying to answer that second

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 question, trying to begin to answer that second
2 question of anti-tumor effects, the difficulty in
3 the design of the trial is shown here and that is
4 that all of these patients by design are in a
5 minimal residual disease state, complete remission
6 at the time we give vaccinations, so that standard
7 tumor shrinkage criteria cannot be used to ask
8 whether the vaccine had an anti-tumor effect.

9 However, there is a molecular surrogate
10 marker for minimal residual disease in this
11 particular disease and while we're not saying this
12 is good enough for licensing of a drug, to prove
13 scientific -- proof of concept, I think you'll agree
14 it certainly is valid. And the premise is based on
15 the fact that even though all of these patients who
16 are in complete clinical remission have no disease
17 by standard clinical criteria, they will all be PCR
18 positive in the blood or bone marrow by using this
19 PCR technique.

20 And the PCR reaction, the molecular
21 marker is of course the 1418 translocation which
22 involves the rearrangement of the BCL-2 oncogene.
23 This rearrangement is detectable by PCR in about 50
24 to 60 percent of patients with follicular lymphoma
25 and again, I don't have the time to go through the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 entire details of the analysis, but I'll just try
2 and hit the high points. It's important in doing an
3 analysis like this that it be set up properly and I
4 think we've accomplished that. These assays were
5 all performed by individuals who were blinded to
6 clinical information. The assays were -- each
7 sample was analyzed by individuals who were blinded
8 to the information at two independent sites here at
9 the NCI as well as with a collaborator at Penn
10 State, Hershey, and 10 replicates were used per time
11 point, internal controls and in each case the
12 rearrangement was -- the amplified product was
13 confirmed by nucleotide sequencing. And 11 of those
14 20 patients had tumors which were -- that had break
15 points that were amplifiable by this nested PCR
16 reaction. Eight of those patients converted to PCR
17 negativity after the vaccine while three others
18 remained persistently PCR positive in the peripheral
19 blood and these are ten replicates at each given
20 time point.

21 This is a summary of the PCR results on
22 those 11 patients. Again, 8 out of the 11 converted
23 from PCR positivity pre-vaccine. All of them were
24 PCR positive, even though they were in a clinical
25 complete remission. Eight converted in the red

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 boxes to PCR negativity and have maintained this PCR
2 negative status at serial sampling for up to 27 plus
3 months continuously. Of the three patients who were
4 PCR -- who did not clear detectable disease, one of
5 them has relapsed and is one of the two patients out
6 of the entire group of 20 who have relapsed, the
7 remainder remain in first continuous complete
8 remission.

9 And so in wrapping up this first part of
10 the talk, these first two points correspond to the
11 two questions that I posed at the beginning and that
12 is the first question is whether we could even
13 immunize against this particular antigen. We
14 believe through some of the data that I've shown you
15 today, that we're arriving rapidly at the answer in
16 the affirmative for this particular antigen and
17 that's demonstrated by 17 of 20 patients vaccination
18 against idiootype has elicited the first evidence for
19 CD-8 positive T-cells specific for their autologous
20 tumor cells.

21 These data are also important, perhaps
22 equally so, because they formally suggest that
23 follicular lymphoma cells can present the endogenous
24 idiootype presumably as peptide MHC complex to CD-8

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 positive cells and therefore can serve as targets of
2 immune response in vivo.

3 Secondly, in terms of anti-tumor
4 effects, aside from -- well, 8 out of 11 patients
5 whose tumors were mbr positive converted to PCR
6 negativity, we believe providing the first
7 systematic evidence for an anti-tumor effect of
8 idiotypic vaccination in this disease, aside from
9 several anecdotal reports that have been published
10 of isolated regressions of tumor masses in patients
11 who are already in a minimal residual disease state.

12 We think that the reason that we're
13 seeing both of these effects, profound immunologic
14 effects, as well as the very provocative molecular
15 responses so easily is the GMCSF which we think is a
16 critical factor of this particular vaccine
17 formulation. And these are just the clinical, just
18 in writing, the clinical results, the clinical
19 outcome of these patients that 18 of 20 remain in
20 continuous first CR with a median follow up of 36
21 plus months after the completion of induction of
22 chemotherapy. Of course, what's needed to provide
23 the final answer to that second question now is a
24 randomized multi-center controlled trial to vaccine
25 versus not.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I'm going to just use the remainder of
2 my time to illustrate an approach in which we are
3 exploring the use of dendritic cells in vitro with
4 this particular antigen. This slide illustrates an
5 alternative strategy that we have been pursuing for
6 some time now. This is actually the clinical
7 history of the first patient who was published in
8 Lancet in 1995 in which this is really an adoptive
9 T-cell immuno-therapy approach in which we've
10 actually immunized the donor, the healthy marrow
11 transplant donor and achieve transfer of T-cell
12 immunity from donor to recipient through the bone
13 marrow inoculum.

14 For all the reasons that we might have -
15 - that you've heard today that we might have
16 difficulty immunizing the autologous tumor-bearing
17 host, these are the reasons that we should be trying
18 to immunize normal donors or cells derived from
19 normal donors for adoptive transfer. And I'll just
20 point out the last one that from a cancer vaccine
21 standpoint, it's been particularly appealing to us
22 because immunization of a healthy donor should be
23 relatively easily accomplished compared with the
24 tumor-bearing patient.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Well, since that time we've evolved our
2 thinking some and there are probably inocula,
3 transfer inocula that are more effective than bone
4 marrow for transfer of T-cell immunity if what one
5 is trying to really transfer ultimately is
6 essentially a pure population of tumor specific T-
7 cells and this stands for donor lymphocyte infusion
8 for those who are not in the hematology field.

9 And secondly, for various reasons it's
10 probably appealing to be able to do this whole
11 thing, maneuver this whole immunization of donor T-
12 cells in vitro rather than or in addition to in
13 vivo. And the approach that's shown here is as one
14 could guess is to take donor T-cells and to do a
15 primary in vitro immunization using dendritic cells,
16 to expand those
17 T-cells and to give them then, subsequently transfer
18 them to the patient as a tumor-specific T-cell
19 immunotherapy. And in collaboration with Kim Lierly
20 and Yee Wen Lee and their laboratories at Duke, we
21 have accomplished this in a pilot study of a single
22 patient in whom we've accomplished the top part
23 which I'll share with you in the next two slides,
24 that is the primary in vitro immunization for T-cell
25 immunity.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Yee Wen Lee took peripheral blood from a
2 leukophoresis from a normal donor and took the
3 adherent cells and established isolated dendritic
4 cells with GM and IL-4 and pulsed those using those
5 dendritic cells that were pulsed with the whole
6 immunoglobulin protein derived from the myeloma of
7 the recipient, then sensitized T-cells through
8 multiple rounds of stimulation. And this T-cell
9 line now, the activity of this T-cell line is shown
10 in this slide and specifically for its activity
11 against the autologous, for its ability to kill the
12 autologous, that is the recipient plasma cytoma
13 cells. So again, we're using the autologous tumor
14 cells as the target here for read out.

15 What he has shown is that these T-cells
16 are capable of killing the autologous plasma cytoma
17 target and again in a tumor specific manner because
18 normal B cells from the same recipient are not
19 killed and that this killing can be blocked again by
20 anti-Class 1.

21 There are both CD-4, this line consists
22 of both CD-4 and CD-8 positive tumor cells. They
23 make substantial amounts of interferon gamma. This
24 is a fast immune assay and other type TH-1 type
25 cytokines in response to the autologous tumor cells

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 stimulation and again this response is tumor
2 specific.

3 So I'd like to just close with this
4 final slide which illustrates several aspects that
5 we haven't been able to share with you, but that is
6 the exciting ability to develop other formulations
7 of this particular antigen, including those such as
8 chemokines fused to the antigen of interest which
9 probably also work by activating, recruiting
10 dendritic cells in vivo. I've shared with you how
11 we've used dendritic cells to generate T-cell
12 immunity in vitro and lastly, one of the most
13 exciting aspects is the existing clinical trials,
14 taking material from those trials back into the
15 laboratory to answer basic questions in immunology.

16 This final slide is perhaps most
17 important. It's an acknowledgement of the
18 individuals from my laboratory who performed much of
19 the work I presented. I want to acknowledge also
20 Craig Reynolds and Jay Greenblatt for their help,
21 continuing help with production aspects in support
22 of the clinical trial as well as regulatory aspects
23 and somebody once told me that you know you really
24 have arrived when you have your own beer. Thank
25 you.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 (Applause.)

2 DR. MULÉ: Thanks, Larry. I'll ask now
3 all the session speakers to come up front and we'll
4 spend some time going over some issues in a panel
5 discussion. On behalf of Dr. Steinman, myself, I'd
6 like to thank all the speakers for their
7 presentations. So if we can have everyone come up
8 front here.

9 DR. MARTI: I too, would like to thank
10 all of the speakers of this afternoon's session for
11 a tremendous amount of information that they've
12 shared and the battery on my watch is dead, so
13 please, somebody watch the time. I think there's a
14 Medicine Review Board course in this room at 5
15 o'clock. Anyway, on page 14 of your program book
16 are the questions that have been formulated for the
17 panel and I'm going to just start with the first
18 question because I think it's been very central to
19 many of the presentations this afternoon. And that
20 question is what is the immunophenotype of a
21 dendritic cell? Can we have a common
22 immunophenotype that can be agreed upon in the form
23 of consensus, a single tube assay? Would it be two
24 color, three color or four color? And also, while
25 the panelists are thinking about identifying the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 dendritic cell, I think that it's just important, as
2 important, to think about the other cells that are
3 in that preparation. And again, this is not so much
4 for the idea of purity, but it's to have some
5 feeling for what's in the product and what's being
6 infused into patients.

7 So perhaps, Dr. Steinman, we can start
8 with you.

9 DR. STEINMAN: Yes, I think the point is
10 product characterization and I think the useful
11 markers would be the lineage markers, CD-3, CD-14,
12 CD-19, CD-56 and so the dendritic cells shouldn't
13 have those markers. And then you want DR and I
14 think you need to know the level of co-stimulators.
15 The three that we like the most are CD-40, 54 and
16 86.

17 And then you get to the dendritic cell
18 restricted markers, so it's currently available are
19 83, hopefully DC-LAMP will come soon. So think
20 that's a pretty big panel. That will cost you
21 \$5,000 probably.

22 (Laughter.)

23 DR. MARTI: What about ILT-3?

24 DR. STEINMAN: The ILT-3, my
25 understanding of that family is that it's broadly

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 expressed on myeloid cells and I think you were
2 taking advantage of other scatter properties in
3 getting the specificity that you did. I think after
4 culture, especially,
5 ILT-3 will be on many different kinds of myeloid
6 cells, but it's a little early there.

7 And then I just want to emphasize two
8 things you brought up, Jerry, which is one that
9 we've got to standardize our facts and you gave us
10 terrific leads with those issues of cytometry and
11 the beads, and secondly, that we've got to start
12 using permeabilized specimens. For example, CD-83
13 is found inside the immature dendritic cell and it's
14 maybe a very helpful marker for that state. DEC-
15 205, human equivalents are just coming in, but
16 that's largely intracellular, it's elect and
17 receptor on the dendritic cell and DC-LAMP, of
18 course, is almost entirely intracellular. So I
19 think that's going to be informative.

20 DR. MARTI: Thank you. Mike?

21 DR. LOTZE: All of the studies in terms
22 of characterizing DCs in our clinical protocols have
23 been worked out in our immunologic monitoring and
24 diagnostic labs by Elaine Elder and Tracey Whiteside
25 and in addition to the ones that Ralph talked about

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 where we do a cocktail of antibodies to define
2 lineage negative cells against CD-86 or Class 2, we
3 also increasingly have been using the GMCSF receptor
4 alpha chain and the IL-3 receptor alpha chain to
5 differentiate the lymphoid, I should put nominally
6 lymphoid dendritic cells and myeloid DCs. You can't
7 really define cell of origin based on just
8 phenotype.

9 I also think it's important, the point
10 that was made by Ralph about the contamination by
11 other cells. Many of the results that I see coming
12 out of our clinical trials gate on the large cells
13 and you tend to ignore the fact that there are a
14 large number of contaminating other cells, most of
15 which are T-cells which cluster with the DCs very
16 effectively. And so since we know as Drew
17 emphasized earlier and I think Jacques, these T-
18 cells can also modulate DC function, both in culture
19 and presumably after adoptive transfer. It's
20 important we try and get a handle on this nominal T-
21 cell contamination.

22 And then I also think -- just as one
23 final point, is I think the issues related to
24 maturity of DCs is again an issue which over and
25 over again has been thematic for the last couple of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 years where the bright expression of Class 2 CD-86,
2 CD-80 and the mature DC marker, CD-83 as well as P-
3 55 active bundling protein are the ones that we're
4 going to have to add to define the DCs that we're
5 giving. I'm hopeful at the end of the next couple
6 of years of clinical testing that we'll be able to
7 say these are DCs that were derived that had some
8 kind of clinical endpoint if not clinical endpoint
9 antigen response endpoints which ultimately are
10 going to be the things we'll dictate what the best
11 DC is for clinical trials.

12 DR. MARTI: Dr. Banchereau, I'm not so
13 sure that you agree that there is T-cell in your
14 preparations. What markers would you suggest for
15 the other non-dendritic cells?

16 DR. BANCHEREAU: First, one needs to
17 know what he or she wants in terms of the phenotype
18 of DC. I mean it's an important question. Do we
19 want immature cells? Do we want partially mature
20 cells? Do we want to fully mature cells? That's
21 the number one question.

22 I don't think anyone has addressed that
23 yet. So that's going to be dictating the phenotypes
24 you want to look at. Certainly what we heard from

1 Ralph and Mike we fully agree with. How to use it,
2 that's another question.

3 The second question is the
4 subpopulations. Do we want to Langerhans cell
5 types, do we want interstitial DC type. Again, we
6 have specific markers for that. We know that the
7 CD-2 is expressed on the interstitial DC, CD-9
8 expressed on interstitial DC. We have LAG expressed
9 on the nonligand cells. Those may be a refinement,
10 that we may want to go for because according to what
11 we are searching, we may be interested in knowing
12 that. Finally, the contaminants, the contaminants
13 are important. We don't have much T-cell
14 contaminants using the C-34. I think the people
15 doing the monocytes have more of that problem.

16 Now, is that a real contaminant, is that
17 a beneficial contaminant? Is that a nonbeneficial
18 contaminant? Who knows? Again, those are questions
19 to address and certainly in the case where you do
20 CD-34, one contaminant you should pay attention to
21 are the basophil are eosinophil. If you don't do a
22 Giemsa and if you -- you may be biased by your facts
23 because again, the facts don't show you what cell
24 type you have, so I have forever been pledging for
25 people to do a Giemsa staining to see what cell type

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 do you have in your culture because it avoids the
2 gating which is very dangerous. And for CD-34
3 cells, we do find TNF to be very essential to avoid
4 the development of basophils and eosinophil. Now, a
5 few basophils and eosinophils, I don't think is
6 going to hurt you, but we had been playing with some
7 population where we are setting up all the
8 technology for the application to the clinical
9 trials. We had in some cases a lot of eosinophils
10 and basophils. And I don't think you want to inject
11 that in too large quantities.

12 So those are the considerations. Don't
13 forget the Giemsa.

14 DR. MARTI: Would any of the other
15 panelists care to comment further upon
16 immunophenotyping of dendritic cells before moving
17 on?

18 DR. KWAK: Well, I think there are
19 others in the audience, especially, I might ask Kim
20 Lierly to comment on your dendritic cell
21 preparations? Maybe you're going to talk about that
22 tomorrow.

23 DR. MARTI: Is she here? He, I'm sorry,
24 thank you. There's a microphone, at least one I see
25 here.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Perhaps it will come up again. If there
2 are no further comments on the --

3 DR. MULÉ: I would like to raise one
4 issue which is in respect to if we agree on a panel
5 of antibodies that one would use to characterize DC
6 for the clinical trials and whether that's a panel
7 to be used for CD-34 derived versus monocyte
8 derived, I think one thing we also have to keep in
9 mind is that there is significant variability in
10 patients with cancer with respect to the profiles
11 that one sees when one standardizes the culture
12 conditions for dendritic cell generation. It's
13 predicated on the previous treatments that the
14 patients have received, the tumor type and another
15 good example is in CD-34 mobilization strategies
16 with GCSF, the types of cells that are immobilized
17 depend critically on the mobilization strategy
18 that's employed and a good example are tumor cells
19 that may also be mobilized to the peripheral blood
20 when one uses GCSF. So it's not a simple concept of
21 just using a defined panel of antibodies, but it's
22 more complicated when one looks at the clinical
23 situation in cancer patients.

24 DR. ESSAYAN: Is there any utility to an
25 algorithmic or order of different markers. Can you

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 reduce the \$5,000 aspect by looking at more
2 expeditious methods of identification of dendritic
3 cells?

4 DR. STEINMAN: You know, we just look
5 down the microscope and we know what we have, but I
6 just think we're at the stage where we're using
7 different sources and different labs and we just
8 won't be able to standardize unless we all collect
9 the data. The issue is whether the NCI can help us
10 and start providing these antibodies, especially
11 some of these ones that are getting a little hard to
12 get.

13 DR. LOTZE: I like the idea of
14 antibodies to gamma interferon for the LE spot.
15 That would be a good thing for the NCI to provide.

16 (Laughter.)

17 The one thing that I would argue is that
18 I think a premature rush to standardization to
19 define virtue in the absence of crisp, clinical
20 endpoints may be a bit premature in the sense that
21 we're going to have to go through a period of
22 exploration before we can come to conclusions and I
23 think we ought to use the best available markers and
24 the best available information today, but we ought
25 to not rush to judgment as to which cell is the best

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cell or the best phenotype before we collect what is
2 really the endpoint data, ability to generate an
3 effective immune response, either to nominal
4 antigens or particularly to tumor antigens and the
5 associated clinical response.

6 DR. MARTI: I think Dr. Stewart has a
7 question.

8 DR. STEWART: I just wanted to make a
9 comment that I agree with what Mike just said, if we
10 rush into this too fast we may come to the wrong
11 rules, let's say. We seem to like rules nowadays.
12 But at Roswell, we have created 12 different
13 combinations of antibodies and I just noticed four
14 more that I didn't realize were important in DCs and
15 getting normal reference ranges of DCs with the
16 strategy that basically everyone is using, but I'm
17 trying to take every antibody that's ever been
18 reported on a DC to be as comprehensive as possible
19 to develop a normal reference range in a normal
20 population from which we can now base therapeutic or
21 clinical effects of our treatments and we hope to
22 have that study done in the next three or four
23 months and I don't think it's going to cost us
24 \$5,000.

S A G CORP.

1 DR. LOTZE: Carleton, are you doing that
2 for what's in normal peripheral blood or based on
3 what's in cultured cells. Part of the problem is
4 once you start manipulating cells in culture and
5 subjecting them to a variety of different
6 environmental milieu ex vivo, then you've got a
7 zillion different phenotypes.

8 DR. STEWART: Yes. Right now, we're
9 just focusing on what you're starting with and
10 presumably what you would have in the patient after
11 you have done something.

12 We have four groups at Roswell who are
13 working on DCs and I know who gets the best
14 populations and who gets the worst ones.

15 DR. LOTZE: Best and worst is judgmental
16 and based on what?

17 (Laughter.)

18 Based on clogging your flow cytometer
19 or?

20 (Laughter.)

21 DR. MARTI: You know the question that
22 was asked not only at baseline, what goes into the
23 culture, but in reference to what is in the culture
24 at the end that you're going to infuse. Do the
25 investigators have any limits? I mean, if you only

1 have one percent, do you still go ahead and infuse
2 that; or if you have 10 percent, do you infuse that?
3 Where do you not infuse?

4 DR. STEWART: I think this was brought
5 up all throughout all of your talks, the fact that
6 we have a heterogeneous group of laboratories
7 studying a heterogeneous group of cells, and even in
8 our own institute we can see that different people
9 are isolating their cells in different ways,
10 culturing them in different ways, and because they
11 all -- I provide the flow for all of them, I can see
12 the differences and I know what you're talking
13 about. And there's not going to be any consensus
14 until we all figure out what's going on, because
15 maybe everybody is doing it right for what they're
16 doing. The problem is they don't know what they're
17 doing.

18 (Laughter.)

19 DR. MARTI: Would you go to the
20 microphone? This meeting is being transcribed and
21 perhaps state your name.

22 DR. WEBER: It's Jeff Weber from USC.
23 Just to address Carleton's point, I would think the
24 gold standard should still be in the clinical trials
25 whether you see clinical benefit. To address your

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 question of whether you should infuse DC if it's 10
2 percent or 25 percent or 50 or 80, if you can see
3 clinical benefit, i.e., shrinkage of disease or what
4 ever other surrogate immunologic marker you use,
5 maybe it should be 10 percent, but I wouldn't make
6 arbitrary assumptions until the data are in, and
7 they probably will not be in for a year or maybe two
8 years.

9 DR. BANCHEREAU: The only problem
10 actually is that you want to know how many DC or
11 bona fide DC you have injected. I mean whether you
12 have to inject 10 million cells, total cells, to
13 give you one million DC or whether you just inject
14 one million of pure DC, one of the problems is to
15 know whether your 9 million contaminants would not
16 be limiting the effect of the DCs. I think that's
17 the issue.

18 DR. LOTZE: Can I bring up one other
19 issue? Everything we've talked about right now is
20 phenotype and at the same time I think functional
21 assays which have not been discussed so far by this
22 panel, including ability to opsonize FITC latex
23 beads, the opportunity to stimulate in the mixed
24 lymphocyte response where I think Ralph showed some
25 data with your perfect T-cell donor who responds to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 all of your DCs, the ability to make the dendrokinases
2 that we can identify, IL-12, alpha interferon, are
3 also other potential assays are important.
4 Phenotypically, we see a similar set of DCs from
5 hepatitis C patients and yet if you look at their
6 ability to make IL-12, they are functionally
7 deficient and yet phenotypically they are not
8 dissimilar from the other DCs we get from other
9 individuals, and so I think some functional assays
10 might also be in order as you assess DCs.

11 DR. MARTI: You know this was a big
12 problem with CD-34 cells, trying to find a
13 functional assay that didn't take 7 to 10 days or 5
14 weeks for cobblestone assay.

15 We did have one speaker this afternoon,
16 Dr. Urdal who raised a very provocative question
17 about the use of CD-54 as a -- I guess an activation
18 marker, something like CD-69 on T-cells. Does the
19 panel, or Dr. Urdal like to comment further on that?

20 DR. URDAL: Yes, only to make the point
21 that it is clearly CD-54 is one of those markers
22 that I completely concur is upregulated in the
23 system that we work with. Most people would cite it
24 as a marker that's useful to quantify numbers of
25 dendritic cells you might have in the culture; and I

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 think it's coupled obviously with biology, that if
2 you inhibit that molecule it's clearly required for
3 interaction with naive T-cells in the presence of an
4 antigen for antigen presentation so it's at least
5 linked to the biology of that interaction.

6 DR. MARTI: Do any of the other
7 panelists have experience with flow cytometric-based
8 functional assays or markers?

9 DR. LOTZE: We're doing some assays in
10 our own laboratory where you use permeabilized DCs
11 with staining of alpha interferon and IL-12 after
12 stimulation with SAC or LPS gamma interferon as a
13 way of defining at least their IL-12 production
14 capabilities and that's a relatively brief assay.

15 The other one which has traditionally
16 been used is just the ability to uptake particular
17 antigens where you could use a variety of ones
18 coupled with a fluorochrome like FITC.

19 DR. BANCHEREAU: But that would not work
20 if you want to inject a mature DC, because a mature
21 DC is not phagocytosing.

22 DR. LOTZE: And again, this will
23 distinguish that functional characteristic of an
24 immature versus a mature and can be used both in the
25 negative as well as the positive.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MARTI: If there are no further
2 comments either from the audience or from the panel,
3 we'll --

4 DR. KWAK: I've got one comment.

5 DR. MARTI: Go ahead.

6 DR. KWAK: Dr. Weber made a statement
7 that I think needs to be challenged. I really
8 disagree that clinical endpoints are going to be
9 able to guide you with subsequent development of
10 your clinical trials. Unless you're dealing with a
11 very homogeneous group of patients, you're never
12 going to make any sense out of those few anecdotal
13 clinical responses or the majority of patients who
14 don't respond. I think you really have to answer
15 that first question first which is can you make an
16 immune response. You pick an endpoint that you
17 believe in and use that to monitor and guide your
18 subsequent modification of clinical trials.

19 DR. KUFEL: We heard this morning that
20 acceptable endpoints were clinical responses but not
21 immunologic assays. I think that needs to be
22 clarified.

23 DR. KWAK: I guess that's for -- the FDA
24 folks can speak for themselves, but I think that was
25 for licensing considerations, not for doing science.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MARTI: Perhaps this might be a good
2 transition point to Question 4 which deals with
3 functional assays and I know that in the remaining
4 15.5 minutes that we have in this auditorium that we
5 won't get -- arrive at any consensus, but is it
6 possible between the types of assays with regards to
7 proliferation of cytotoxicity and cytokine secretion
8 is the most important thing to show some type of
9 antigen specificity? And don't everybody jump in at
10 once.

11 DR. LOTZE: Maybe I'll just comment
12 about the melanoma as a perfect place to start,
13 perhaps idiotype and lymphoma where you actually
14 have a defined antigen. Much of the problem with
15 many of the other nonantigen, specific driven
16 approaches is you don't have a target. So I think
17 clearly if you're immunizing with peptide X, mart 1,
18 GP-100, tyrosinase, TRP-1, whatever it is, that it
19 would be not novel or amazing to think that T-cell
20 assays in response to that are an important part of
21 your immunologic monitoring. I guess the critical
22 question in our mind is where you look for such
23 cells. Traditionally, they have been looked for in
24 the peripheral blood. Our approach has been to
25 increasingly look at the site of tumor or at a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 surrogate for tumor, DTH site, which we biopsy and
2 then look at those T-cells as potentially a way to
3 look for specific T-cell responses.

4 DR. MARTI: Before the panel continues,
5 Dr. Puri reminded me that we also in terms of the
6 functional assessment are concerned about whether or
7 not we can measure or should measure quantitation of
8 the peptide load. I think Dr. Banchereau, I really
9 liked his cartoon drawings that showed in a very
10 graphic way the loading of the dendritic cells. I
11 know that we're going to hear some more about this
12 in the conference, but in addition to proliferation,
13 cytotoxicity, and cytokine secretion, when the
14 ability to measure antigen-loaded cells, would that
15 be a better one? And maybe, Dr. Banchereau, you can
16 be next.

17 DR. BANCHEREAU: Thanks. Obviously, it
18 would be wonderful if you could do that, but how can
19 you do that? I mean, maybe one day we will -- I
20 really don't know how to address that. It's a tough
21 question. Ralph, why don't you take it?

22 DR. STEINMAN: The antibodies stem HC
23 peptide hopefully will come on board. That may not
24 be a simple situation though. And I think what
25 we're doing in terms of peptide is we always have a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 functional readout for dendritic cell stimulation of
2 a peptide specific T-cell and then we saturate the
3 system functionally. So, for example, in the flu
4 matrix system most of the time 10 nanomolar or 100
5 nanomolar peptide is plenty, and yet we're treating
6 the dendritic cells that we prime the patients with
7 or boost the patients with ten micromolar, one
8 micromolar peptide so we're way above saturation we
9 think.

10 DR. MARTI: Go ahead --

11 DR. STEINMAN: We'll really get, I
12 think, held back if we start doing all these
13 measurements as a standard thing. It's certainly a
14 terrific research --

15 DR. MARTI: Experimental.

16 DR. LOTZE: I just want to make a
17 cautionary note that the peptide pulse DC in vitro
18 is not again necessarily what you want to measure
19 because they have their own life history after
20 you've pulsed them. They will lose their ability to
21 present that peptide with time, decrementally very
22 quickly in studies shown from Franco Marencllo's
23 group here at the NIH, within 24 hours these peptide
24 pulse DCs have substantially decreased their ability
25 to stimulate specific T-cells, and a recent

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 publication in JI from Andy Amascatto at the
2 University of Pittsburgh showed that peptide-pulsed
3 DCs are the Edward Scissorhands of immunology. They
4 slice and dice the peptide very quickly in a model
5 peptide antigen tyrosinase. You actually cleave it
6 very quickly and the question is how long do these
7 peptide-pulsed DCs remain as effective immunogens,
8 and it brings up all sorts of questions about
9 whether alternative strategies using longer
10 peptides, authentic proteins or again as was
11 suggested, apoptotic bodies and apoptotic cells
12 being the preferred way to deliver antigen that we
13 contemplate not only what happens in a heartbeat in
14 our in vitro assays, but also what's happening over
15 the course of DCs in vivo because I think they're
16 degrading these peptides very quickly.

17 DR. MARTI: I think Dr. Urdal has a
18 comment and then Dr. Banchereau.

19 DR. URDAL: I just wanted to kind of
20 echo the remarks that Mike went on to say, there's
21 really nothing new to that.

22 DR. BANCHEREAU: So suddenly one day, I
23 believe that we're going to have before the panel a
24 monoclonal antibody that would recognize the right
25 peptide in the context of the right HLA Class 1 or

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Class 2, but it's going to take a number of years to
2 identify the right peptides and then to identify the
3 right antibodies that recognize that. Meanwhile, I
4 think functional assay is going to be the
5 conclusion.

6 DR. MARTI: Moving on down, if we could
7 still have some comments from the other end of the
8 panel with regards to functional assays. Dr. Kufe?

9 DR. KUFÉ: Well, as I presented, we've
10 been using MLR assays with the fusion cells as one
11 functional assay, and we've just begun cultivating
12 the fusion cells with autologous T-cells and then
13 assaying the function of those stimulated T-cells to
14 kill autologous targets at CTOs. So those are our
15 two main functional assays that we're using right
16 now.

17 With regard to antigen in the approach
18 we're using with a fusion cell, we have a
19 semi-quantitative way of identifying the antigens
20 that are expressed by the fusion cell, but I think
21 it's still problematic in terms of how much is
22 actually presented on the cell surface as you have
23 with peptide loading.

24 DR. MULÉ: One additional assay that
25 we'll hear more about tomorrow is the MAC peptide

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 tetramer. Peter Lee is here and it's obviously not
2 a functional assay per se, but allows us to very
3 easily monitor
4 T-cell reactivity in bulk assays by measuring
5 directly peptide binding T-cells as a way of giving
6 some indication of whether or not there's skewing or
7 biasing or the T-cell repertoire of pre versus post
8 immunization.

9 DR. MARTI: Raj?

10 DR. PURI: I was just wondering about a
11 question from Dr. Lotze. If that antigen is cleaved
12 off from the MHC group in very short period of time
13 so the functional assay which you are measuring it
14 may not be due to the antigen or maybe soluble
15 antigens are not presented in the MHC group or the
16 short time exposure to the responder cell is enough
17 to generate the functional response.

18 DR. LOTZE: If I understand your
19 question, Raj, it is if you believe that the peptide
20 is being lost with rapid kinetics from the pulsed
21 DC, how are you eliciting an immune response? I
22 actually think it is the peptide and the MHC. It's
23 just that in terms of comments about how much
24 peptide you need, it's possible that you're not only
25 filling empties as well as displacing loosely bound

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 peptides in MHC, which I think is perhaps a little
2 bit less likely that you might be also loading
3 cytosolic stores. I think Drew Pardoll's comment
4 was in a ridiculous way with very high antigen
5 concentration which is what you're doing with
6 synthetic peptide, you can actually drive it into
7 the cell and you might be able to get some loading
8 into Class 1, but I think it's a very inefficient
9 pathway and we don't have any direct evidence to
10 support that that's the major way the peptide is
11 getting into Class 1.

12 DR. PURI: Is there any possibility that
13 the peptide is recycled, is taken up again by the
14 cell, by the passive transport and then presented
15 again in the MHC group?

16 DR. LOTZE: I think Ralph presented
17 evidence as well as Drew that DCs can generate
18 antigen which is taken up by secondary set of DCs
19 whether you invoke exosomes or perhaps some other
20 mechanisms that there's cross priming which occurs
21 at a continuous level in vivo. And so it's possible
22 that the DCs that you're generating are also somehow
23 leading to the direct feeding and activation of
24 another set of DCs that are resident in the host and
25 to whom you've transferred these cells.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 MS. GOLDEN-FLEET: I have a quick
2 question, please? I'm Meg Golden-Fleet from Wake
3 Forest Cancer Center. Referring to a point that you
4 made about once you have pulsed your dendritic cells
5 and they start to decrease in their ability to
6 stimulate T-cells, would that affect, if you wanted
7 to generate your dendritic cells, pulse them, then
8 cryopreserve them and use those to infuse your
9 patients, do you think that would decrease the
10 function if that's what you wanted to do? Or they
11 have a very small amount of time that they would
12 really work?

13 DR. LOTZE: These are almost impossible
14 questions because, again, if you're going to use
15 clinical endpoints as the important ones, it's
16 impossible to know that. And we've struggled with
17 this in our own laboratories and had prolonged
18 conversations about whether to do just that, pulse
19 and then freeze and then thaw and so on and my
20 current feeling is you pulse, wash and get into the
21 patient as quickly as possible to try and optimize
22 the time period in which they can encounter your
23 specific
24 T-cell because recognize that the DCs have got a
25 little bit of work to do, once you do the adoptive

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 transfer. It's got to migrate into the secondary
2 lymphoid organs and encounter the appropriate T-
3 cells, and I think the least time possible from
4 peptide pulsing to getting into the patient is
5 probably the best, but that's intuitive, there's no
6 data that supports that.

7 DR. PURI: If I may, this question
8 reminded me that I needed to ask that question for
9 Dr. Urdal. Dr. Urdal has suggested that CD-54
10 expression on DC cells could be taken as a potency
11 test, as opposed to identity test, because you look
12 at some sort of proliferative response to CD-54
13 antigen. He indicated that MLR takes seven days and
14 it's not feasible to use that test before you
15 administer cells to the patient. What happens --
16 are you planning to give dendritic cells in a repeat
17 administration a different cycle to this patient,
18 and if yes, then shouldn't that MLR be done in those
19 cases to look at the functional response?

20 DR. URDAL: The current protocols that
21 we're following usually involved monthly infusions
22 or twice monthly infusions of antigen-pulsed
23 dendritic cells, and it's a process that they
24 basically, after the antigen-pulsed dendritic cells
25 are created in vitro, they're delivered and infused

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 into the patient within six to eight hours. So any
2 assay that would be used as a release assay that
3 can't be done within that period of time is not one
4 that would be very meaningful for that particular
5 protocol that we're using. Now in all studies or
6 most of the studies we're doing now we are, in fact,
7 doing MLRs so we're collecting that data after the
8 cells have actually been reinfused into the patient,
9 but what we need are assays that reflect the
10 properties of the cells that we think are important
11 to their function in vivo, but that those are assays
12 that could be accomplished within this period of
13 time that you'd like to get them back in in their
14 most viable and healthy state into the patient.

15 DR. PURI: And if I may, another
16 question for Dr. Urdal again was that how
17 quantitative assessment of CD-54 expression you can
18 do by flow cytometric analysis or do you have a
19 quantitative way of determining the antigen
20 expression?

21 DR. URDAL: Well, what we see in our
22 system at time zero the 54 population that we gate
23 on is not present. It only appears after the 40-
24 hour culture period that we use and so in a sense by
25 setting those gates and seeing the level of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 expression that we can measure, we're reasonably
2 confident that we have a relatively robust way of
3 being able to identify that population of cells in
4 the patient samples that we've been processing up
5 until now.

6 DR. MARTI: We'll have to take these
7 last two questions very quickly. We'll start with
8 you, sir.

9 DR. AVIGAN: Just a quick comment, David
10 Avigan from Beth Israel and Dana-Farber. At the
11 last DC meeting it was mentioned that it is really
12 uncertain what the best maturational state for
13 dendritic cells for clinical analysis is. And I
14 think before we get into sort of formatting both
15 functional or immunophenotyping because immature DCs
16 really look very differently than mature DCs. I
17 think that question has to really be answered, so
18 even CD-14 which is something that we've been
19 excluding is something that's seen in some immature
20 populations.

21 DR. MARTI: Thank you. And you, sir?

22 PARTICIPANT: A question for Dr. Urdal.
23 How do you avoid cross priming of your DCs by
24 contaminating tumor cells which might originate due
25 to the aphoretic process to collect the DCs?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. URDAL: At the moment, we don't
2 avoid it. If it's occurring, we don't -- if there
3 are contaminating tumor cells we're not really
4 checking for them at this point so it's not
5 something that we're actively looking at at this
6 point.

7 DR. MARTI: According to the timer here
8 I have 10 seconds to sum up the panel's discussion.
9 There's lots of suggestions and ideas for -- I'm
10 more optimistic of developing consensus on a
11 phenotype than I am on functional studies. Also, it
12 seems to me that the group would like the NCI to
13 make some of these reagents available for study and
14 they would like to see some support for the ELISA
15 spot and there's a call, a general call to collect
16 data. Let's end this session now and the third
17 session will begin tomorrow morning at 8 o'clock,
18 0800 hours.

19 (Whereupon, at 5:02 p.m., the workshop
20 was recessed to reconvene tomorrow, Friday, December
21 11, 1998 at 8:00 a.m.)

22
23
24
25

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525